

Oracle® Applications

Upgrading Oracle Applications

Release 11*i* (11.5.4)

May 2001

Part No. A90308-01

ORACLE®

Contributing Authors: Jill Arehart, Dawn Austin, Daryl Breen, Janet Buchbinder, Steve Carter, Gail D'Aloisio, Steve Damiani, Taite Darlington, Michelle Fields, Brian Gause, Rachel Haas, Elizabeth Looney, Julia Margaretson, Joseph Murphy, Kent Noble, Michael O'Shea, Kristin Penaskovic, Christina Ravaglia, Susan Saperstein, Richard Sears, Yun Shaw, Keith M. Swartz, Milly Wang

Program Documentation is licensed for use solely to support the deployment of the Programs and not for any other purposes.

The Programs (which include both the software and documentation) contain proprietary information of Oracle Corporation; they are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are also protected by copyright, patent, and other intellectual and industrial property laws. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of the Programs is prohibited.

The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in the documentation, please report them to us in writing. Oracle Corporation does not warrant that this document is error free. Except as may be expressly permitted in your license agreement for these Programs, no part of these Programs may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose, without the express written permission of Oracle Corporation.

If the Programs are delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing or using the programs on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

Restricted Rights Notice Programs delivered subject to the DOD FAR Supplement are "commercial computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs, including documentation, shall be subject to the licensing restrictions set forth in the applicable Oracle license agreement. Otherwise, Programs delivered subject to the Federal Acquisition Regulations are "restricted computer software" and use, duplication, and disclosure of the Programs shall be subject to the restrictions in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights (June, 1987). Oracle Corporation, 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

The Programs are not intended for use in any nuclear, aviation, mass transit, medical, or other inherently dangerous applications. It shall be the licensee's responsibility to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of such applications if the Programs are used for such purposes, and Oracle Corporation disclaims liability for any damages caused by such use of the Programs.

Oracle is a registered trademark, and Context, EMM Advantage, Net8, Oracle Alert, Oracle Application Object Library, Oracle Financials, Oracle MetaLink, Oracle Quality, Oracle Web Customers, Oracle Web Employees, Oracle Work in Process, Oracle Workflow, Oracle8, Oracle8i, PL/SQL, SmartClient, SQL, SQL*Net, SQL*Plus, and SQL*Report are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Contents

Send Us Your Comments	ix
Preface.....	xi
Audience.....	xi
How to Use This Guide	xiii
Information About Steps	xiv
Conventions.....	xiv
Documentation Accessibility	xvi
Overview of an Upgrade	xvi
Important Upgrade Considerations	xvii
Scheduling Time for Your Upgrade.....	xvii
Protecting Data in Renamed Files	xix
Upgrading 10SC Global Demo Database	xix
Shared Products.....	xix
Inactive or Partially Implemented Installed Products	xix
Release 11i System Requirements	xix
Customized Environments.....	xxiv
Architecture	xxvii
Database Considerations	xxvii
Forms and Reports	xxx
Applications	xxx
1 Category 1 — Before You Receive the Software	
Database Upgrade Steps.....	1-2

Database Upgrade Tasks	1-2
Applications Technology Products	1-7
System Administration Tasks	1-7
Application Object Library Tasks.....	1-9
Oracle Alert Tasks.....	1-9
Financials Product Family	1-10
Oracle Cash Management Tasks	1-10
Oracle Payables Tasks.....	1-10
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	1-11
Oracle Receivables Tasks.....	1-13
Country-specific Financials Product Family	1-15
Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks	1-15
HRMS Product Family	1-17
Oracle Human Resources Tasks	1-17
Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks	1-20
Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family	1-21
Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks	1-21
Public Sector Product Family	1-22
Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks.....	1-22

2 Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

Environment Preparation Steps	2-2
Environment Preparation Tasks.....	2-2
Database Upgrade Steps	2-4
Database Upgrade Tasks	2-4
Applications Technology Products	2-9
System Administration Tasks	2-9
Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks.....	2-11
Financials Product Family	2-12
Oracle General Ledger Tasks	2-12
Global Accounting Engine Tasks	2-16
Oracle Payables Tasks.....	2-19
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	2-23
Oracle Purchasing Tasks.....	2-34
Country-specific Financials Product Family	2-36

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks	2-37
Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks.....	2-44
Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks	2-45
HRMS Product Family	2-46
Oracle Human Resources Tasks.....	2-46
Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family	2-47
Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks	2-47
Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks.....	2-49
Oracle Order Management Tasks	2-51

3 Category 3 — Performing the Upgrade

Applications Technology Products	3-2
Oracle Alert Tasks	3-2
Oracle Common Modules Tasks	3-3
Oracle Workflow Tasks	3-4
Financials Product Family	3-6
Oracle Payables Tasks.....	3-6
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	3-9
Oracle Receivables Tasks.....	3-11
Country-specific Financials Product Family	3-14
Oracle Common Countries Financials Tasks.....	3-14
HRMS Product Family	3-15
Oracle Human Resources Tasks.....	3-16
Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family	3-16
Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks.....	3-16
Oracle Order Management Tasks	3-20
Oracle Purchasing Tasks.....	3-20
Public Sector Product Family	3-22
Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks.....	3-22
Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks	3-24
Database and System Administration Upgrade Steps	3-27
System Administration Tasks.....	3-27
Database Upgrade Tasks	3-29
Run AutoUpgrade	3-39

4 Category 4 — Before Using Oracle Applications

Database Upgrade Steps	4-1
Database Upgrade Tasks	4-2
Upgrading Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)	4-9
Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks	4-10
Applications Technology Products	4-12
System Administration Tasks	4-12
Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks.....	4-21
Country-specific Financials Product Family	4-23
Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks.....	4-23
Oracle Financials Common Country Features Tasks	4-24
Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family	4-25
Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks	4-25
Public Sector Product Family	4-27
Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks	4-27
Environment Verification Tasks	4-29

5 Category 5 — Before Using Your Products

Financials Product Family	5-2
Oracle General Ledger Tasks	5-2
Global Accounting Engine Tasks	5-4
Oracle Payables Tasks	5-8
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	5-10
Oracle Receivables Tasks.....	5-23
Country-specific Financials Product Family	5-30
Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks.....	5-30
Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks.....	5-31
Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks.....	5-32
Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks	5-34
HRMS Product Family	5-43
Oracle Human Resources/Payroll Tasks (U.S., U.K., and Japan)	5-43
Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family	5-46
Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks	5-46
Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning Tasks	5-48
Oracle Order Management Tasks.....	5-49

Oracle Purchasing Tasks.....	5-56
Public Sector Product Family	5-64
Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks	5-64
Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks	5-66

6 Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

Applications Technology Products	6-2
System Administration Tasks	6-2
Application Object Library Tasks.....	6-4
Oracle Alert Tasks	6-8
Oracle Common Modules Tasks	6-9
Financials Product Family	6-10
Oracle Cash Management Tasks	6-10
Oracle General Ledger Tasks	6-11
Oracle Payables Tasks.....	6-18
Oracle Projects Tasks.....	6-22
Oracle Receivables Tasks.....	6-23
Country-specific Financials Product Family	6-24
Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks	6-24
Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks.....	6-30
Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks.....	6-32
Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks	6-41
HRMS Product Family	6-42
Oracle Human Resources Tasks	6-42
Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks.....	6-44
Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family	6-45
Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks	6-45
Public Sector Product Family	6-48
Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks	6-48
Public Sector Budgeting Tasks.....	6-48
Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks	6-52

7 Finishing Your Upgrade

System Maintenance Upgrade Tasks	7-1
Required Finishing Tasks	7-7

Implement Product and Country-specific Functionality	7-7
Review Installation Log Files	7-7
Review Server Process Control Scripts	7-7
Verify Environment Setup Files	7-8
Resize your Database	7-9
Change Database Passwords	7-9
Back Up Oracle Applications	7-9
Start Oracle Applications	7-10
Change Applications Passwords	7-10
Optional Finishing Tasks	7-10
Set Up National Language Support (NLS)	7-10
Set Up Business Intelligence System	7-11
Convert Custom Message Dictionary Functions	7-11
Convert Database to Multiple Organizations (Multi-Org)	7-11
Convert to Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)	7-12
Understand System Administration Tasks	7-12
Understand Oracle Applications Maintenance Tasks	7-12

A Products in This Release

Product List	A-1
--------------------	-----

B Getting Help

Related Documents	B-1
Oracle Customer Service	B-2
EMM Advantage	B-4

Index

Send Us Your Comments

Oracle Applications, Upgrading Oracle Applications, Release 11i

Part No. A90308-01

Oracle Corporation welcomes your comments and suggestions on the quality and usefulness of this document. Your input is an important part of the information used for revision.

- Did you find any errors?
- Is the information clearly presented?
- Do you need more information? If so, where?
- Are the examples correct? Do you need more examples?
- What features did you like most?

If you find any errors or have any other suggestions for improvement, please indicate the document title and part number, and the chapter, section, and page number (if available). You can send comments to us in the following ways:

- Electronic mail: apps_relgrp_us@oracle.com
- FAX: 650.506.1113 Attn: Oracle Applications Release Group
- Postal service:
Oracle Corporation
Oracle Applications Release Group
500 Oracle Parkway, M/S 3op4
Redwood Shores, CA 94065
U.S.A.

If you would like a reply, please give your name, address, telephone number, and (optionally) electronic mail address.

If you have problems with the software, please contact your local Oracle Support Services.

Preface

This book describes the steps for preparing your products for an upgrade to Release 11i (11.5.4) from Release 10.7 (NCA, SmartClient, or character-mode) or Release 11.0. It also tells you how to perform post-upgrade steps after you run AutoUpgrade.

Note: This manual, and any other documentation associated with this release, was current as of the time it was published and released. However, you should always check *OracleMetaLink* for the most up-to-date information. *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes*, *Oracle Applications Release Notes*, and *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* are available *only* on *OracleMetaLink*.

This manual also applies to upgrades from character-mode Release 10.7 installations. However, unless otherwise noted, the navigation paths in the steps are written for GUI versions. The *Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes* reference manual contains character-mode equivalents of GUI menu paths.

Note: If you are using Release 10.7 (NCA, SmartClient, or character-mode) or Release 11.0 of Oracle Applications, you may upgrade directly to Release 11i. *You cannot upgrade to Release 11i directly from releases prior to 10.7.*

Audience

This manual is written for the persons who are responsible for upgrading Oracle Applications. In it, we assign upgrade steps to the following roles. Note that the role names and descriptions correspond to the ones included in the Oracle upgrade methodology used by EMM Advantage. (See Appendix B for more information.)

Application Specialist

Provides knowledge and guidance regarding application functionality. This person also supports and provides interpretation for tools, templates, and methods.

Database Administrator

Installs and configures the Oracle database and maintains database access controls. This person provides consultation on performance, and is responsible for monitoring growth and fragmentation of the production database and ensuring database backup and recovery.

System Administrator

Responsible for administering the development system. This person's responsibilities include:

- Ensuring that hardware is correctly configured
- Installing, configuring, and maintaining operating and development software
- Ensuring that the system is backed up daily
- Designing and maintaining system security—for example, establishing system accounts.

The system administrator provides first-line support for problems with the development system and ensures that faults are quickly rectified. This person may perform the setup and initial maintenance of the production system or advise the client's operational staff on these tasks. The system administrator works with the project team to optimize system performance. They also install packaged applications environments and convert data.

Technical Specialist

Responsible for designing, developing, unit testing, implementing, and maintaining the custom extensions for the Oracle applications. These extensions include, but are not limited to, modules—such as interfaces, automated data conversions, reports, forms, and enhancements.

IS Manager

Directs the client information systems organization within a business. The IS manager acts as a business line manager for the staff in the IS organization. This person is responsible for the technical infrastructure of a business, including decisions about purchases, in-house development, and operational maintenance

and support. The following information system staff report directly or indirectly to the IS manager:

- application and technical architect
- technical analyst
- designer
- technical (database, network, system) administrator
- operations staff
- support staff

The IS manager defines the information systems strategy for a corporation and puts the strategy into practice through standards, policies, practices, and information systems selection processes.

How to Use This Guide

This book is organized by *category*, not by product. Each chapter outlines the upgrade tasks in a single *step category*. There are three types of steps: pre-upgrade, post-grade, and finishing. Categories 1, 2, and 3 are *pre-upgrade* steps, which you perform before you run AutoUpgrade. Categories 4, 5, and 6 are *post-upgrade* steps, which you perform after you have run AutoUpgrade. You must complete all steps that apply to your installation before you start the steps in the next category.

After all Category 4, 5, and 6 steps have been completed, and after you have verified that the entire upgrade was successful, you must perform *finishing* steps to complete your upgrade. Some finishing steps are required, and some are optional.

Note: Product-specific implementation manuals have information about implementing new products that is not included in this manual. Consult these references before you begin the upgrade.

Commercial and government versions of products, such as Oracle General Ledger and Oracle Public Sector General Ledger, are covered in the same chapter. All information in the chapter applies to both the commercial and the public sector versions unless noted otherwise.

Information About Steps

This manual notes certain conditions that apply to each step:

Required	Necessary for a successful upgrade.
Conditionally required	Applies only under certain conditions. If the condition does not apply, you do not have to perform the step.
Recommended	May be in your best interest to perform this step. For example, it may substantially reduce the time it takes to run an upgrade script.

Step Summary Lines

Each step begins with a heading that gives the step number and step title. Below this are summary lines that indicate information such as which release this step applies to, who performs the step, whether you need a user’s guide to carry out the instructions, whether users must log off the product while the step is being performed, and so on. For example:

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payroll)
Reference manual: Oracle Payroll User’s Guide	Users must log off: No

In addition, the step summary lines for some products *may* contain other information that is unique to that product. For example:

- Perform for this country: **Brazil**
- Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**
- Perform for each product group: **Yes**

Note that you perform the steps *only* for the release level that corresponds to your installation.

Conventions

We recommend that you review the following conventions used in this manual.

Convention	Meaning
Monospace text	Represents command line text. Type this text exactly as shown.
< >	Text enclosed in angle brackets represents a variable. Substitute an appropriate value for the variable text. Do not type the brackets.

Convention	Meaning
[]	Square brackets enclose optional items or indicate a function key. Do not type the brackets.
	A vertical bar represents an <i>or</i> option among several options. You must enter only one of the options. Do not type the vertical bar.
/directory or \directory	A slash before a directory name indicates that it is a subdirectory. The path name may be either uppercase or lowercase.
\$ or C:\>	Represents the command prompt. Your prompt may differ.
\	In examples of commands you type online, a backward slash at the end of a line signifies that you must type the entire command on one line. <i>Do not type the backslash.</i>

Special notes alert you to particular information within the body of the manual.

Message	Meaning
Additional Information:	Refers you to portions of this manual, another manual, or the online documentation. All references to other manuals refer to the most recent version of that manual, unless otherwise noted.
Attention:	Alerts you to important information that will help you use the system.
Note:	Highlights helpful hints and practical tips that can save time and make installation or other procedures easier.
Warning:	Warns of actions which, if not carried out properly, could be damaging or destructive to your operations

Note: Network Computing Architecture (NCA) is now known as Internet Computing.

Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible, with good usability, to the disabled community. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle Corporation is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For additional information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>.

JAWS, a Windows screen reader, may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an otherwise empty line; however, JAWS may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

Overview of an Upgrade

This release employs Rapid Install (formerly known as One-Hour Install) — a fast, easy method of installing the most up-to-date, certified version of Oracle Applications, along with the required technology stack components. For an upgrade, you use it to create the new file systems for your middle tier components and to create the new file system for your database server, if it is on a platform that supports Oracle Applications on the middle tier. For complete information about using Rapid Install, refer to *Installing Oracle Applications*.

You will continue to use AutoUpgrade (formerly AutoInstall) to upgrade your products. For complete information about using AutoUpgrade, refer to *Maintaining Oracle Applications*.

Because many of the new products in this release are built on existing Oracle Applications products, you should pay close attention to the revised product list (see Appendix A). In general, you will need to perform the following tasks to complete an upgrade to Release 11i:

- Read the documentation associated with the current release. You'll find a complete list in Appendix B. All documentation is available either on the *Oracle Applications Documentation Library* CD or from OracleMetaLink.
- Review all the steps that apply to your products to determine the most efficient way to perform the upgrade for your unique combination of products.
- Complete the Category 1 steps listed in this manual.

- Begin the Category 2 steps by running Rapid Install to create the new file systems for your middle tier components and the new ORACLE_HOME for your Applications database. See Upgrading Your Installation, *Installing Oracle Applications* for details.
- Apply consolidated AD patches and family consolidated upgrade patches, as directed in the latest *Oracle Applications Release Notes*.
- Complete the remaining Category 2 steps, and the Category 3 steps, including Running AutoUpgrade, as directed in this manual.
- Begin the Category 4 steps. When instructed to do so, run Rapid Install again to configure and start the server processes. See Upgrading Your Installation, *Installing Oracle Applications* for details.
- Complete the remaining Category 4 steps, and the Category 5 steps, Category 6 steps, and finishing steps in this manual.
- Pay careful attention to product-specific documentation. It contains information about implementation tasks you may need to perform the finish the upgrade.

Note: It is *imperative* that you perform the steps in the order listed in this manual. If you do not, the success of your upgrade could be compromised.

Important Upgrade Considerations

Some of the new Release 11*i* functionality may affect the way you use your products after you upgrade. This section outlines several aspects of the process that warrant special attention. For a complete list of changes and enhancements, review the *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*, *OracleMetaLink*, and your product implementation manuals and user's guides.

Note: Release 10.7 NCA and Release 10 SmartClient (10SC) Production 16.1 are interchangeable at the database level.

Scheduling Time for Your Upgrade

The best way to know how much time to schedule for your upgrade is to perform a test upgrade of your current Oracle Applications installation, using hardware similar to what you will use for the production upgrade. This experience provides a baseline for upgrade execution times and an opportunity to work out any upgrade

issues ahead of time. A test upgrade is especially important if your site has customizations.

During the test upgrade, you can use the Release 11*i* Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet to gather statistics about the time needed to perform pre- and post-upgrade steps and run AutoUpgrade and AutoPatch. Using this Excel spreadsheet, and this manual, you enter the start and end times as you perform each upgrade step in your test upgrade. The spreadsheet calculates the total time by category, the crucial downtime, and the total upgrade time.

The *crucial downtime* period includes the time it takes to perform all the Category 3 and 4 upgrade steps and the time it takes for AutoUpgrade and AutoPatch to run. During this period, your users will not be able to use Oracle Applications. Using the timing statistics gathered on the Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet, you can establish a benchmark for subsequent test upgrades and, finally, for the production upgrade. The spreadsheet is included on the *Oracle Applications Documentation* CD. It includes a readme with complete instructions.

Minimizing Upgrade Downtime

Your upgrade employs Rapid Install to create the new file systems for your middle tier components and the new file system for your database server. This eliminates the need for many previously required tasks, such as re-linking application executables and generating form, report, and message files.

In addition to performing a test upgrade, follow these tips to reduce downtime:

- Perform all Category 1 and 2 steps before making the system unavailable to end users. Note that we recommend you migrate or upgrade your database to Oracle 8*i* Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.7 in Category 1.
- The upgrade may require more data server horsepower than normal runtime usage. Some customers enjoy performance gains by installing the administration server on a different machine than the database server, thus allowing more CPU to participate in the upgrade.
- Review \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out/adt00001.lst (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out\adt00001.lst (NT) to identify long-running processes.
- Match batch commit size with your rollback segment sizing. Starting with Release 11.0, many scripts that process potentially large quantities of data accept a parameter that specifies the batch commit size. This parameter is automatically passed by AutoUpgrade to the script based on your response

when you started the upgrade. A larger batch commit size processes data more quickly, but requires larger rollback segments.

Protecting Data in Renamed Files

If you have renamed files using the <filename>old, <filename>new, or any other generic designation intended to protect the files from being overwritten by newer versions, it is a good idea to rename these files before you begin the upgrade. Because this convention is used by a variety of people with different intentions, the upgrade process may inadvertently overwrite files that you intended to save.

Upgrading 10SC Global Demo Database

Data in Production 16 (10SC) Global Demo databases is not supported in Release 11*i*. See Common Modules Tasks in Chapter 3 for more information.

Shared Products

You typically perform upgrade steps only for the products you have fully installed. However, you may need to perform upgrade steps for some products if they are installed as shared (dependent) products. Take note of shared product steps you need to perform according to your system implementation. To determine the dependent products you have installed, run \$AD_TOP/sql/adutconf.sql (UNIX) or %AD_TOP%\sql\adutconf.sql (NT).

Inactive or Partially Implemented Installed Products

You must perform the upgrade steps for every installed product regardless of which products you actually use. For example, if you have Oracle Human Resources (Oracle Personnel) fully installed but only partially implemented, you must still perform the Oracle Human Resources upgrade preparation steps.

All products are installed in the database. Therefore, some steps, like dropping obsolete objects after the upgrade is complete, must be performed for all products.

Release 11*i* System Requirements

The requirements for CPU, memory, and disk space (for log files and backups) during an upgrade are typically much larger than those required during runtime.

Technology Stack Components

During the upgrade process, Rapid Install installs and configures required technology stack components including:

- Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (8.1.7)
- Oracle Forms Server, Oracle Reports Server, Oracle Graphics (8.0.6 Oracle Home)
- Oracle HTTP server
- JInitiator (1.1.7) on the PC client

See the Certify web page for the latest information on certification requirements.

If you are upgrading from a character-mode environment, there are significant infrastructure considerations. For example, you must understand which type of server in the Oracle Applications architecture requires an installation of each product. Rapid Install installs all components including the Applications technology stack, Oracle Applications file systems and environment, and sets up your database listeners, web listener, web server, forms server, and reports server.

Required Software for Relinking and Patching on NT

Oracle Applications Release 11i for Windows NT is enhanced to provide on-site linking. In the new "UNIX-like" model, re-linking (required by patches or upgrades) is done automatically at your site by AD utilities, resulting in fewer changes to your environment and reduced chances of a "bad" patch caused by unidentified dependencies.

CPU Requirements

The CPU requirements for upgrading Oracle Applications depend on many factors, including:

- the size of your database
- if you are converting to Multi-Org, the amount of data in the primary product installation group
- the number of operating units for which seed data is being replicated
- the impact of the change from rule-based optimizer to cost-based optimizer (CBO) on your custom code
- the number and duration of long-running processes in Release 11i products

See *Maintaining Oracle Applications* for recommendations on the number of workers to use during the upgrade.

Memory Requirements

To calculate the memory requirements for upgrading Oracle Applications, you should consider:

- number of forms servers
- number of concurrent users
- infrastructure requirements for internet computing

Disk Space Requirements

To estimate the increase in required disk space for upgrading, you should consider the number of languages being installed and the change in the data model, which, in Release 11i, is largely driven by Order Management and Customer Relationship Management (CRM) applications.

Rapid Install installs database files for all products regardless of their licensing status. If the forms and concurrent processing servers are installed on the same machine, some space efficiencies may be achieved. Estimates of the file system sizes in the data model for Release 11i are shown in the following table:

Server	File System Size
Forms	2783 MB
Concurrent processing	1211 MB
Web	173 MB
Administration	1563 MB (includes 243 MB for help files)

In addition, some of the files are copied to JAVA_TOP and HTML_TOP, which typically reside outside the APPL_TOP.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Installation Update;
Installing Oracle Applications*

Tablespace Requirements

You must set up your tablespaces before you upgrade Oracle Applications. Your database administrator should take into account the following types of tablespace:

- SYSTEM tablespace, largely affected by the number of packages and languages
- Rollback segments
- Temporary tablespace

- Product table and index tablespaces, including default tablespace, additional space for languages, and country-specific functionality.

Additional Information: *Oracle8i Server Organization and Requirements; Oracle Applications Installation Update*

We have provided a script to help you create tablespaces for your new products and resize the tablespace for existing products. You will find details in Step 2, under the Category 2 Database Upgrade Tasks section of this manual.

Long-running processes

Certain changes in Release 11i have resulted in long-running processes, which may require tuning to optimize performance during the upgrade. To identify long-running processes, review \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out/adt00001.lst (UNIX or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out\adt00001.lst (NT).

Long-running processes have been identified in the following areas:

- conversion of database from rules-based optimization of SQL queries to cost-based optimization.
- migration of existing date and non-integer data from character columns to date and number type columns. See Category 5, Global Accounting Engine Tasks.
- certain Oracle Payables conversion scripts

Performance of some upgrade scripts can be significantly improved by changing the following database settings for the duration of the upgrade:

hash_area_size (init.ora parameter) Controls the amount of memory that Oracle can use for hash join processing. Oracle recommends a value of 30 MB for the hash area size, provided that the database server has sufficient available memory. You can calculate the maximum amount of memory that can be used for this parameter by dividing the amount of available memory (after taking into consideration the size of the SGA and the user processes) by the value of the parallel_max_servers.

parallel_max_servers (init.ora parameter) Controls the maximum number of parallel query server processes running in the database. Oracle recommends a value equal to 4 times the number of CPUs.

Temporary tablespace (usually TEMP) Should be created as a locally managed tablespace using the temporary file option with a uniform allocation size. If your

temporary tablespace is not defined in this way, you should drop the temporary tablespace and recreate it using the following example as a template:

```
SQL> drop tablespace TEMP;
SQL> create TEMPORARY tablespace TEMP
      tempfile 'ts_p_tmpl.dbf' size 2048M
      EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL
      UNIFORM SIZE 10M;
```

To verify that the temporary tablespace has been created, execute the following:

```
SQL> select CONTENTS,EXTENT_MANAGEMENT,ALLOCATION_TYPE
      from dba_tablespaces
      where tablespace_name='TEMP' ;
```

The query output should be:

CONTENTS	EXTENT_MANAGEMENT	ALLOCATION_TYPE
-----	-----	-----
TEMPORARY	LOCAL	UNIFORM

After you complete your upgrade, change the hash_area_size and parallel_max_servers settings back to the defaults, and restore the previous storage parameters for the temporary tablespace. During the upgrade, use a 10 MB uniform extent size for the temporary tablespace. After the upgrade, lower the extent size for the temporary tablespace to a value that is less than 1 MB (for example, 128 K).

Batch Commit Sizes

Batch commit size determines the number of rows to commit at one time when certain scripts run. AutoUpgrade prompts you to enter a batch commit size. If you do not specify a value, it defaults to a relatively small value to accommodate systems with small rollback segments. To take advantage of large rollback segments, specify a batch commit size larger than the default value.

Individual products, such as Projects and Inventory, may also have commit size parameters for driver files. Where applicable, you will find these driver files in <PROD>_TOP/admin/driver (UNIX) or <PROD>_TOP\admin\driver (NT). Each script includes the specific syntax you must modify for the commit size parameter. Your database administrator can determine the appropriate commit size for each script, given the size of your rollback segments.

Invoker Rights

The new Invoker Rights feature of Oracle8i ensures that most packages are installed only in the APPS schema. Other schemas, such as the MRC schema, have synonyms

to the packages in the APPS schema, and the corresponding packages in the APPS schema have grants to the MRC schema. PL/SQL routines use Invoker Rights to access the package in the APPS schema. In an MRC database, this can markedly decrease the size of the database and shorten the time needed for upgrade, patch, and maintenance tasks.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Concepts*

Customized Environments

Customized code requires special attention during an upgrade. The instructions in this book assume that you have followed the standards for customizing Oracle Applications *exactly* as described in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* and the *Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products*. To preserve your customizations and minimize the impact during the upgrade, you must:

- follow the instructions set out in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*
- read and understand the information about upgrading customizations in the Customization Standards chapter of the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*
- maintain complete documentation for your customizations
- back up your customizations before you upgrade

Types of Customizations

You can customize your Oracle Applications in two ways:

- Extension

Develop new components for existing Oracle Applications and develop new applications using the development features of Oracle Application Object Library. *Customizations by extension are preserved during the upgrade.*

Additional Information: Customization by Extension, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

- Modification

Modify existing Oracle Applications components. You should use this method only when you cannot meet a requirement using Oracle Applications features

and customization by extension is not an option. *Customizations made by modification may be overwritten by AutoUpgrade.*

Warning: Modifications to Oracle Applications components introduce a level of risk, and are not supported by Oracle.

Additional Information: Customization by Modification, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Upgrades and Patches

You should pay special attention to the Oracle Applications Upgrades and Patches section in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*. It contains important information about how the upgrade treats your customizations.

In general, take note of the following information:

- Customizations not stored in the standard Oracle Applications directory structure are not upgraded. You must reintegrate them using a custom application directory structure to isolate your changes and make applying upgrades and patches easier. You may need to retrieve your customizations from the backup you made before the upgrade.
- If your custom extension has the same name as a new Oracle component, AutoUpgrade may change or rename it. When naming database objects, it's a good idea to use XX as a part of the short name. For example, you might define your custom application to use the short name XXGL, and database objects to begin with an XXGL_ prefix.
- Some of your customizations may no longer work correctly or may no longer be necessary. If the version of the Oracle Applications file you customized has not changed, you need do nothing extra. Depending on the nature of the changes, you can copy the new version of the Oracle Applications files to your custom application directory and then reapply your customizations.

Warning: Customizing any concurrent program definitions, menus, value sets, or other seeded data provided by Oracle Applications is not supported. The upgrade process will overwrite these customizations. It is your responsibility to determine the impact of this action on your users.

Customized Reports

SQL*Report (RPT), the flexfield APIs FlexRpt, and FlexSQL are no longer supported. Rewrite custom reports that use these programs using a tool such as Oracle Reports Developer.

Additional Information: Coding Oracle Reports Concurrent Programs, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Customized Forms

If you have custom forms written in SQL*Forms 2.3 in Release 10, you need to rewrite them in Oracle Forms Developer 6i according to Oracle Applications standards and then generate the new forms.

If you are upgrading from Release 10SC (SmartClient), Release 10.7, or Release 11.0, and all your custom forms are already in Oracle Forms 4.5, you need to regenerate these custom forms, run the Oracle Applications upgrade utility, and make minor required changes reported by the Oracle Forms Developer 6i compiler and the upgrade utility. If you wish to use the new features of Oracle Forms Developer 6i, you must supplement your form in accordance with the coding standards in the *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*.

Additional Information: Customization Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Customized Help Files

This release contains a new online help system. The help files are in HTML format, making them easy to modify using a commercial web browser/editor such as Netscape Communicator. You can also add HTML and GIF files of your own to the help system.

You cannot reapply your previously customized help files to Release 11i. You must recreate customized help in the new online help system. Therefore, it is important that you save your pre-upgrade customized help files as a reference.

Additional Information: Customizing Oracle Applications Help, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Incremental Backups

During the upgrade process, we strongly recommend that you back up the database to safeguard against unexpected data loss and application upgrade errors. Should your original data become corrupted, you can use the backup to restore the database. Recommended backup points are noted throughout this manual.

Architecture

Before you begin to upgrade your Oracle Applications products, you should read and understand *Oracle Applications Concepts*, which contains a complete discussion of the architecture in this release. Pay special attention to the information about Internet Computing, Multi-Org support, Multiple Reporting Currencies, and multiple Oracle homes.

Note: If you set up your installation to use Multi-Org, you defined an Operating Unit and set the site-level AOL profile option MO:Operating Unit to use this new operating unit. *Do not delete this profile option.* If you do, you will not be able to complete the upgrade process successfully.

Database Considerations

Oracle Applications Release 11i requires an Oracle8i Enterprise Edition 8.1.7 database server because some products have dependencies on Oracle8i features. This manual contains pre- and post-upgrade steps that are required for an Applications database upgrade or migration.

Additional Information: *Oracle8i Server Migration; Oracle8i Utilities*

Migrating or Upgrading your Database

Migrating or upgrading your existing database to Oracle 8i Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.7 can be performed either in Category 1 or in Category 3, therefore it is described in *both* places.

Note: *Do not* migrate or upgrade your database twice — if you completed this step in Category 1, do not perform it again in Category 3.

The migration or upgrade steps differ based on when you perform them. For example, if you upgrade in Category 1, you must apply the appropriate interoperability patch for your Oracle Applications release level so that your 10.7 or 11.0 Applications will continue to work with the 8.1.7 database until you complete the Release 11i upgrade. This step is not required if you migrate or upgrade in Category 3. Read both sets of steps carefully before you begin.

In addition to other required files, Rapid Install creates a complete Oracle8i 8.1.7 technology stack. While you may install the database on your own, Oracle

recommends that you use this technology stack so that all scripts will function without need for modification.

Block Size

This release requires an ORACLE database blocksize of 8K or larger. In addition to providing significant performance improvement, Oracle Applications has some indexes that require a minimum blocksize of 8K. If you use a 2K or 4K ORACLE blocksize, you must migrate your database to a blocksize of 8K (or larger) before you run AutoUpgrade to upgrade to Release 11i.

Installed vs. Licensed Products

Rapid Install creates the Oracle Applications file system, and AutoUpgrade upgrades all database objects, regardless of license status. When maintaining Oracle Applications, AutoPatch copies only the files appropriate for your APPL_TOP configuration. For example, report files are not copied into an APPL_TOP that is configured as a forms server. In addition, to save time during patching, AutoPatch does not generate any files for unlicensed products.

Cost-based Optimization (CBO)

Optimization is the process of choosing the most efficient way to execute a SQL statement. In the Oracle8i database, and Oracle Applications Release 11i, the Oracle optimizer uses cost-based, rather than rule-based, optimization. *Cost-based optimization (CBO)* dynamically determines the most efficient access paths and join methods for executing SQL statements by taking into account statistics such as the size of each table and the selectivity of each query condition.

Release 11i represents a transition from rule-based to cost-based optimization. Because CBO is enabled during the AutoUpgrade process, the pre-upgrade steps in this book are rule-based, while steps performed after you run AutoUpgrade (post-upgrade) are cost-based. You may want to evaluate the impact of CBO on your custom code in your test system before you begin your upgrade.

Additional Information: Cost-based Optimization, *Oracle Applications Concepts*; Cost-based Optimization in Oracle Applications, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*; The Optimizer, *Oracle8i Concepts*

Dropping Obsolete Columns

During the upgrade process, the Oracle8i DROP COLUMN command marks Oracle Applications columns as unused in the data dictionary, making it possible for the

system administrator to drop the columns and reclaim the associated space. It is a good idea to plan this reclamation ahead of time with your users because the process locks the associated tables. Once the space is reclaimed, the upgraded data model looks more like a fresh install (except for customizations). Note that DROP COLUMN has no effect on custom columns.

NLS Database Considerations

Each additional language may take up to 200 MB of space in the database. If there is not enough space to accommodate this growth, you will encounter an error during the upgrade or while applying the translations. If you receive an error due to lack of space, simply increase the affected table space and restart the process.

Additional Information: Managing Tablespaces, *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*

You must retain your original language configuration until the entire upgrade is complete (including the post-upgrade and finishing steps). After you complete the upgrade, you can use the License Manager to change it.

Character Sets

If you need to change the character set of your APPL_TOP, you can do so before or after the upgrade. If you choose to change it before the upgrade, make the selection on the appropriate Rapid Install Wizard screen. You must wait until after the upgrade to change the database character set. *The character set of your APPL_TOP must be compatible with the database character set at all times — do not change it before the upgrade in anticipation of changing the database character set after the upgrade.* Changing character sets in your database is considered an Oracle Consulting solution.

Warning: If you change the character set on the application tier to one that is *not* compatible with the current database character set, your upgraded installation will be not be usable.

Enhanced Multilingual Support

External documents, such as customer invoices and packing slips, are available in the language of the customer's choice. Much application reference information,

such as payment terms and units of measure, is multilingual, allowing users to enter and view information in their language of choice.

Attention: If you are installing additional languages, you should refer to the chapter on Internationalization Support in *Oracle Applications Concepts* before you begin your upgrade.

Multiple Databases

When performing these steps for multiple databases that share the same admin file system, run each from \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out (UNIX), or from %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out (NT), instead of \$APPL_TOP/admin/out so the output from each does not overwrite others.

Forms and Reports

Note the following changes to forms and reports in this release.

Standard Date and Number Formats

All dates and numbers are stored in standard format, which means that no matter how they are input, they will be processed internally in a consistent manner. To support flexible dates and provide multiple radix support, all data stored in Date and Date-time format value sets must be converted to Standard Date, Standard Date-time, Number, or Character (numbers only) format type value sets.

Additional Information: Category 4, Step 4

Flexible date formats Oracle Applications supports Flexible Date Format in Forms Developer 6i. You can enter and view dates in any valid format, such as 11/25/01 or 11-25-2001. Any format for which SQL provides a mask is valid, and any dates passed to the database are stored canonically with the exception of reports, which always display dates as DD-MON-RRRR. Use the Personal Homepage to set up general preferences.

Additional Information: Customizing the Personal Homepage, *Oracle Applications Concepts*; Appendix B, *Oracle Applications User's Guide*

Multiple radix support Enter and view numbers in forms using the radix format appropriate to your country of operation, using either the period (full stop) character or comma as the radix. For example, you can enter 1.02 and 100,000.02 or

1,02 and 100.000,02. Oracle8i stores all numbers and dates uniformly, and the site level preferences set during installation by Rapid Install determine which character is interpreted as the radix.

Applications

The information in this section applies specifically to Applications in this release.

Upgrading Public Sector Applications Products

The following new and redesigned Public Sector Applications products are included in this release:

- Oracle Public Sector Budgeting
- Oracle Grants Accounting
- Oracle Grants Proposal
- Oracle Labor Distribution

Because these new or redesigned products build on existing Oracle Applications products and add new functionality, each product is installed or upgraded as a mandatory patch, which you must apply as a part of the upgrade process. You apply it (using AutoPatch) immediately after you run AutoUpgrade. Pay special attention to preparatory or finishing steps that may be included in the product-specific documentation for these products.

Note: For Oracle U.S. Federal Financials, Version 2.0 applies to Oracle Applications Release 10.7 and Version 3.3 applies to Release 11.0.3.

FlexBuilder/Account Generator

In Release 10.7, several Oracle Applications products used FlexBuilder to derive account numbers for certain account transactions. In Release 11.0, FlexBuilder was replaced by the Account Generator using Oracle Workflow. This transition affects the following products: Oracle Assets, Oracle Order Entry, Oracle Projects, Oracle Purchasing, Oracle Receivables.

Additional Information: Overview of the Account Generator,
Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide; Oracle Workflow Guide

Note: References to FlexBuilder apply to Oracle Projects only with respect to project transactions that interface with Oracle Payables and Oracle Purchasing. For other purposes, Oracle Projects continues to use AutoAccounting.

If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7 to build Accounting Flexfield code combinations, you must have Oracle Workflow installed and set up to use the Account Generator. AutoUpgrade installs Oracle Workflow for you. However, you need to complete some additional setup steps after the AutoUpgrade processing. If you plan to customize the Account Generator configuration, you should also install the Oracle Workflow Builder on the desktop client.

Before the upgrade, you need to review the way each product uses the Account Generator to generate Accounting Flexfield code combinations. Consider whether the default Account Generator processes are appropriate for each product, and appropriate for each set of books that uses a unique Accounting Flexfield structure. For each structure and set of books, you can choose to:

- use the default Account Generator process
- use the previously customized Release 10.7 FlexBuilder assignment created for Release 11i in the upgrade process
- customize the default Account Generator process

This choice determines which post-upgrade steps your team must perform.

AR Seed Data Changes in Release 11.0

To interface draft invoices to Oracle Receivables, Oracle Projects predefines a context for the AR Transaction flexfield. Oracle Projects also pre-seeds a batch source, transaction types, and grouping and ordering rules for Oracle Projects invoices in Oracle Receivables.

In versions of Oracle Projects prior to Release 11.0, the seeded values contained the prefix PA (for Project Accounting). This data was not translatable and not automatically created for a new operating unit in a multiple organization

implementation. To overcome these issues, changes were made in Release 11.0 to the Oracle Projects seed data in Oracle Receivables.

Seed Data Type	Old Name	New Name
Transaction Flexfield Context	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Batch Source	PA INVOICES	PROJECTS INVOICES
Transaction Type	PA Invoice	Projects Invoice
Transaction Type	PA Credit Memo	Projects Credit Memo
Grouping Rules	PA Grouping Rule	Projects Grouping Rule
Ordering Rules	PA Ordering Rule	Projects Ordering Rule

All customers performing a fresh installation of Oracle Projects with Release 11*i* will see only the new data. If you are upgrading to Release 11*i* from Release 10.7, these seed data changes do not apply to your system. However, you will see the new values (PROJECTS) as well as the old values (PA) that you are accustomed to seeing. You must continue to use *only* the old values. If you create a new operating unit in Release 11*i*, the new data is replicated for the new operating unit.

User-defined Collection Elements

Collection elements Available Quantity, Completed Quantity, and Ship To Location are pre-defined and seeded in Oracle Quality Release 11*i*. If you previously created any user-defined collection elements with these names, they will be renamed with the prefix @ during the upgrade. For example, Available Quantity would become @Available Quantity.

As a result, after the upgrade you will have two collection elements with similar names. When you create collection plans or run reports and queries, you need to consider which collection element you want to use: the Quality-defined collection element or your renamed user-defined collection element.

Category 1 — Before You Receive the Software

This chapter describes the Category 1 steps — they require nothing from the new software. After you complete them, you can continue to use your current Oracle Applications environment. We recommend that you perform these steps as soon as you know that you will be upgrading to Release 11i of Oracle Applications.

- Database Upgrade Tasks 1-2
- System Administration Tasks 1-7
- Application Object Library Tasks 1-9
- Oracle Alert Tasks 1-9
- Oracle Cash Management Tasks 1-10
- Oracle Payables Tasks 1-10
- Oracle Projects Tasks 1-11
- Oracle Receivables Tasks 1-13
- Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks 1-15
- Oracle Human Resources Tasks 1-17
- Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks 1-20
- Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks 1-21
- Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks 1-22

Database Upgrade Steps

Perform the steps for the Database Upgrade before you perform Application Technology or product-specific steps.

Note: If you are upgrading from Release 11.0.1 or 11.0.3, you should read the *Oracle Applications Release 11.0.3 Interoperability Patch Release Notes* before you begin this phase of your upgrade.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)	Database Administrator
2. Maintain multilingual tables (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Verify operating system login (required)	System Administrator
4. Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
5. Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
6. Back up Oracle Applications and customizations (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Back up the Oracle Applications database (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Make a cold backup of the Oracle Applications database to use to restore the database if you encounter problems during the upgrade process.

Warning: Shut down the database with the **NORMAL** option. You may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use the **IMMEDIATE** or **ABORT** option.

Step 2: Maintain multilingual tables (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Installation, Release 10.7 and Release 11	Users must log off: No

If your Applications use MLS, ensure the validity and accuracy of your multilingual tables by running the option to maintain multi-lingual tables from the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration. Review the AD Administration log file, located in \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/log (for 11.0), where <dbname> is the name of the database against which AD Administration is running. NT users will find this file in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\log. In Release 10.7 installations, the file is located in \$APPL_TOP/install/log or %APPL_TOP%\install\log. There should be no ORACLE errors.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Message Reference Manual*

Step 3: Verify operating system login (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator/System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

You need one main operating system login (typically applmgr) to run AutoUpgrade and to manage Oracle Applications product files. Because you are upgrading, the Applications login has already been created. Be sure that you can log in to all the machines in the environments that will be affected by the upgrade process.

Additional Information: Chapter 1, *Installing Oracle Applications*

Step 4: Rename custom database objects with Applications prefixes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

AutoUpgrade automatically runs a script called addrbpco.sql, which drops database objects that match standard Oracle prefixes. For example, if you have a custom stored procedure named GL_CUSTOM in the schema for Oracle General Ledger, it is dropped during the upgrade. An object named XXGL_CUSTOM would

not be affected. To preserve these custom database objects, relocate them to another schema or rename them so that they do not use the Oracle standard prefixes.

Warning: Database object names should contain at least four characters for the product short name, followed by an underscore. Use only letters, digits, and underscores when naming database objects. For example, you could define your custom application to use the short name CUST, and database objects to use CUST_.

Additional Information: Naming Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer’s Guide, Release 10.7 or Release 11.0*

Step 5: Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Interoperability Patch readme file, Oracle8i Reference Guide, Maintaining Oracle Applications	Users must log off: Yes

Releases 10.7 and 11.0 of Oracle Applications are both certified to run with Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.7. *To reduce system downtime during the upgrade, we strongly recommend that you migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i 8.1.7 database now, if you have not done so already.* Perform the following steps:

- 1. Follow the instructions in the *Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.7 Interoperability Notes* for the appropriate Oracle Applications release (either Release 10.7 or Release 11.0). Both are available from *OracleMetaLink*.
- 2. Set init.ora file parameters

In your init.ora file, set the following parameters to the values indicated. Restart your database for the new parameters to take effect.

_complex_view_merging	=	true
_fast_full_scan_enabled	=	false
_like_with_bind_as_equality	=	true
_new_initial_join_orders	=	true
_optimizer_mode_force	=	true
_optimizer_undo_changes	=	false
_or_expand_nvl_predicate	=	true
_ordered_nested_loop	=	true
_push_join_predicate	=	true

_push_join_union_view	=	true
_sort_elimination_cost_ratio	=	5
_table_scan_cost_plus_one	=	true
_trace_files_public	=	true
_use_column_stats_for_function	=	true
_sqlxec_progression_cost	=	0
aq_tm_processes	=	1
always_anti_join	=	NESTED_LOOPS
always_semi_join	=	NESTED_LOOPS
db_block_buffers	=	5000
db_files	=	500
db_file_multiblock_read_count	=	8
dml_locks	=	500
enqueue_resources	=	5000
log_buffer	=	1048576
log_checkpoint_interval	=	100000
log_checkpoint_timeout	=	72000
max_enabled_roles	=	40
nls_date_format	=	DD-MON-RR
nls_language	=	american
nls_numeric_characters	=	.,
nls_sort	=	binary
nls_territory	=	america
open_cursors	=	4000
optimizer_features_enable	=	8.1.7
optimizer_max_permutations	=	2000
optimizer_mode	=	rule
optimizer_percent_parallel	=	0
parallel_min_servers	=	0
processes	=	75
query_rewrite_enabled	=	true
row_locking	=	always
shared_pool_reserved_size	=	30000000
shared_pool_size	=	300000000
sort_area_size	=	256000
timed_statistics	=	true

Additional Information: *Oracle 8i Reference Guide; Maintaining Oracle Applications*

3. Gather database statistics for CBO

The Oracle optimizer, using cost-based optimization (CBO), dynamically determines the most efficient access paths and join methods for SQL query

execution by taking into account certain database statistics, such as the size of each table and the selectivity of each query condition. You need to gather these statistics and keep them current so that the Oracle optimizer can use them to optimize your database queries.

Additional Information: Cost-based Optimization (CBO) in the Preface

Use the FND_STATS package, available as patch 1268797 (for *pre-upgrade* use only), to gather these statistics. Download the patch from Oracle *MetaLink* and apply it using AutoPatch. Then, generate CBO statistics by running the following script:

For 10.7 UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patchsc/107/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 10.7 NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patchsc\107\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 11.0 UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/patch/110/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

For 11.0 NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\patch\110\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afstatrn.sql FALSE
```

4. Identify or create PL/SQL log and out directories

Choose a temporary directory on your database server for log and output files for PL/SQL concurrent programs. If this directory does not exist, create it. Once you have chosen or created the directory, enter it as the value for `utl_file_dir` in `init.ora` for your database. Then, when prompted by AutoUpgrade or AD Administration (during the creation of the Applications environment file), indicate the directory where you want the temporary log/output files to be located (this location is the value of the `APPLPTMP` variable).

Note: This variable name is `APPLPTMP`, which is similar to, but not the same as, `APPLTMP`.

Step 6: Back up Oracle Applications and customizations (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Backup and Recovery Guide**

Users must log off: **Yes**

Back up existing Oracle Applications product files, product customizations, customized help files (in HTML), and the Oracle Applications database before you begin to unload the Oracle Applications software.

Applications Technology Products

Perform the upgrade steps for System Administration and Application Object Library before you perform product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Verify ORACLE schemas (required)	System Administrator
2. Determine attachment file upload directory (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Review current user responsibilities (conditionally required)	System Administrator
4. Preserve your CUSTOM library (recommended)	System Administrator

Step 1: Verify ORACLE schemas (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Users must log off: **No**

Verify that all ORACLE passwords are correct, and disable any ORACLE IDs that are no longer used. Use the ORACLE Users window (Register Oracle IDs window in Release 10.7) to change or disable ORACLE passwords (Security > ORACLE > Register). If there are any user-defined constraints on the objects within an ORACLE ID you wish to make obsolete, disable them before you perform this step.

Additional Information: Register ORACLE IDs, Oracle Applications Security in *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 2: Determine attachment file upload directory (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7NCA, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Application Object Library Reference Manual, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Users must log off: No

In Releases 10.7NCA and 11.0, you could attach file-type documents to any application entity with Oracle Applications Attachments. The files were stored in a directory on the application server, with its location stored in the Attachment File Directory profile option. In Release 11i, file-type attachments are stored in the database. In this step, determine the location of existing attachment files. You will load them into the database in Category 4, Step 12.

1. As System Administrator, choose Profile > System.
2. In the Find System Profile Values window, type *Attachment File Directory* in the Profile field. Press Find.
3. If a profile option has been set, write down its current setting (a directory path). If there is no profile option, there are no attachment files to be upgraded.
4. In the operating system on the application server, verify that there are files in the directory specified by the profile option setting.

Step 3: Review current user responsibilities (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 (character mode)	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Application System Administrator's Guide	Requires concurrent manager: Yes

After the upgrade, you will not have access to any character-mode responsibilities. Use a menu report, a responsibility report, and a Users of a Responsibility report to identify any character-mode users who need to be upgraded to the appropriate Release 11i responsibilities. You must recreate all character-mode menus from scratch after the upgrade.

Additional Information: Managing Oracle Applications Security,
Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide

Step 4: Preserve your CUSTOM library (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide	Users must log off: No

Make a backup copy of your CUSTOM library (CUSTOM.pll) to use when you migrate the library to Release 11*i* in Category 4, Step 9.

Additional Information: Using the CUSTOM Library, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Application Object Library Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6 <i>i</i> (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Transition custom forms to Oracle Forms Developer 6*i* (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0, 10SC (SmartClient)	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Oracle Applications User Interface Standards	Users must log off: No

If you are upgrading from the Release 10.7 character-mode SQL*Forms 2.3, you need to rewrite your custom forms in Oracle Forms 6*i*. If you are upgrading from Release 10SC (SmartClient), Release 10.7, or Release 11.0, and your forms are already in Oracle Forms 4.5, you need to upgrade them now.

Additional Information: Customization Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run the Purge Alert and Action Set Checks alert (recommended)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Run the Purge Alert and Action Set Checks alert (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

This periodic alert finds old Alert data in your Oracle Alert tables and purges it. For best upgrade performance, consider keeping the ALR_ACTION_HISTORY table small (20,000 rows or less). To run the Purge alert, as the Alert Manager:

- 1. Navigate to the Alerts window (Alerts > Define) and choose Query > Enter.
- 2. Type Purge% in the Name field and choose Query > Run.
- 3. Click Enabled and save the screen.
- 4. Choose Request > Check and run the Purge alert.

Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 1 tasks to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Back up custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Back up custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Reconciliation Open Interface (Oracle Cash Management User's Guide)	Users must log off: No

If you have implemented the Reconciliation Open Interface and customized it to work in your environment, you need to back up CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view) and CE_999_PKG (package) to your APPS account, or write a script to recreate them after the upgrade. You will reinstall them in Category 6, Step 1 after the upgrade.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Complete outstanding payment batches (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Complete outstanding payment batches (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Cancel Payment Batch and Confirm Payment Batch (Payables Reference Manual, Release 10.7); (Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11)	Users must log off: No

In character-mode, navigate to the Cancel Payment Batch form (\Navigate Controls Payment ResetPaymentBatch) to see if there are any outstanding payment batches and to confirm or cancel a payment batch.

In GUI, as the Payables Manager, choose Payments > Entry > Payment Batches. Query for in-process payment batches. Complete or cancel batches by choosing the Actions button and using the Actions window.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Clear Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Transfer asset lines and post mass additions (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
4. Upgrade to the new summarization model (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1: Complete transfer and tieback of cost, revenue, and invoices (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 (all versions except character mode), 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

Complete the transfer and tieback processes for all cost and revenue transactions and invoices as part of your normal processing cycle to process most of the data. The transfer and tieback processes are:

PRC: Tieback Expense Reports from Payables PRC: Tieback Invoices from Receivables

PRC: Tieback Labor Costs from General Ledger PRC: Tieback Revenues from General Ledger
PRC: Tieback Total Burdened Cost from GL PRC: Tieback Usage Costs from GL

To run a process, choose Other > Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter the name of the process and submit your request. Run each process again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

Step 2: Clear Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

Perform only if you have any pending transactions in the transaction interface table (PA_TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL).

You must import all pending transactions from the transaction interface table into Oracle Projects. Choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Transaction Import and submit the request. The Transaction Import process prompts you for a Transaction Source.

To be certain that the table is cleared, run the Transaction Import process for each Transaction Source. If the process rejects any records, fix them and run the Transaction Import process again, or delete the records from the table.

Run this process again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

Step 3: Transfer asset lines and post mass additions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

Perform only if you use the capital projects feature in Oracle Projects.

Complete the transfer of asset lines to Oracle Assets as part of your normal processing cycle.

- To transfer asset lines, choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Interface Assets and submit the request.

- To create assets from the assets lines you transferred, run the Post Mass Additions program in Oracle Assets. From the Fixed Assets Manager responsibility, choose Mass Additions > Post Mass Additions.

Run these processes again just before you run AutoUpgrade to ensure that all data in the interface tables is processed.

Step 4: Upgrade to the new summarization model (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

Perform this step *only* if you are using the pre-Release 10.7 accumulation model.

To upgrade to the new summarization model, choose Requests > Run. In the Submit Request window, enter PRC: Update Project Summary Amounts and submit the request. Run this process for all projects.

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Rename custom tax structure (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Save custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
4. Migrate customers as persons (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Rename custom tax structure (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

Complete this step only if you have created a customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure.

AutoUpgrade creates the following default structures: Province, Province.City, City, State.City, State.County.City, No Validation - Country. If you used any of these

names for a customized flexfield structure, rename the customized structures so AutoUpgrade does not overwrite them.

Note: Name your customized Sales Tax Location Flexfield structure something other than one of the six default structures.

Step 2: Save custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Receivables Tax Manual	Users must log off: No

Perform *only* if you have implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized the Tax Vendor Extension views.

Save your customized copies or write a script to recreate them. You will reinstall these views in Category 5, Step 2. Once you complete this step, it's a good idea not to customize any other views before you run AutoUpgrade.

Attention: Software to integrate Taxware (previously known as AVP) and Vertex is included in Oracle Receivables Release 11 and 11i. If you previously integrated Oracle Receivables Release 10 with Taxware or Vertex using software supplied by the Oracle Design and Migration Services (DMS), you must consider additional upgrade issues. See *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use System Release 11i*.

Step 3: Verify realized gains, realized losses, and rounding accounts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)
Reference manual: Oracle Receivables User's Guide	Users must log off: No

For each organization that you have set up and defined a Realized Gains, Realized Losses, or Cross Currency Rounding account, verify that each account is enabled and currently valid as of the date on which you perform the upgrade.

Step 4: Migrate customers as *persons* (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
--	---

Reference manual: Oracle Receivables User's Guide	Users must log off: No
--	-------------------------------

Customer records migrated to Oracle Receivables are brought in, by default, as organizations (companies). If you want to migrate a particular customer (or set of customers) as *persons*, set the CUSTOMER_CATEGORY_CODE in the RA_CUSTOMERS table to CONSUMER for each such customer.

Country-specific Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 1 tasks to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Record the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)	Argentina, Chile
2. Import outstanding bank collection documents (required)	Brazil
3. Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments (recommended)	Columbia
4. Print all completed transactions (required)	Argentina, Brazil, Columbia

Step 1: Record the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)

Perform for this country: Argentina, Chile	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

With Oracle General Ledger for Argentina and Chile, you can define the number of decimal positions to make the inflation rate calculation more precise. Because the internal name of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option has changed, record the value so that you can use it in Category 5, Step 1 to define the profile option.

Additional Information: Define Inflation Ratio Precision, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 2: Import outstanding bank collection documents (required)

Perform for this country: Brazil	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

Import all bank collection documents from the Bank Collection Documents interface tables. From the Brazilian Payables responsibility, run the Import Bank Collection Documents program from the Standard Request Submission windows (Other > Requests > Run). Use the Imported Collection Documents window (Collection Documents > Imported > Collection Docs) to review and fix all rejected bank collection documents.

Additional Information: Entering and Associating Collection Documents, *Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide*

Step 3: Restore all archived technical appraisals and adjustments (recommended)

Perform for this country: Colombia	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

With Oracle Assets for Colombia, you can run a technical appraisal against multiple depreciation books. Restoring archived technical appraisals and adjustments ensures that data created in Release 11 is upgraded to meet Release 11*i* standards.

Note: If you omit this step, the technical appraisal data archived in Release 11 will not be upgraded to the Release 11*i* format, and you will not be able to restore it after the upgrade. Also, you could unknowingly revalue a technical appraisal against a book in which the appraisal was already revalued in Release 11.

Additional Information: Archiving, Purging, and Restoring Technical Appraisals, *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

Step 4: Print all completed transactions (required)

Perform for this country: Argentina, Brazil, Columbia	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

You must successfully print all completed transactions *before* upgrading to Release 11i. Whenever you print your completed transactions, you might experience incidents such as printing errors that could cause a mismatch between an invoice transaction number and the number on a pre-numbered form. In such cases, you can use the Regional Receivables Copy and Void process to maintain clear and accurate audit information. You can only copy and void transactions, however, that have not already been transferred to General Ledger.

WARNING: If you print completed transactions *after* the upgrade, these printing errors could irreparably corrupt your audit trail if you have already transferred your transactions to General Ledger.

HRMS Product Family

Perform the following Category 1 tasks to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update custom code that references obsolete synonyms (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Update custom reports that reference HRV_ and OTV_ (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Note location of custom script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
4. Update custom code for positions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
5. Update user-defined FastFormula definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
6. Update Vertex geocodes data (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Update custom code that references obsolete synonyms (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

AutoUpgrade drops certain synonyms that existed in Release 10.7 for compatibility with Release 9. If you have custom code that references a Release 9 name in the following table, replace it with the associated Release 10.7 name.

Release 9 Name	Release 10.7 Name
PER_LETTER_GENERATION_STATUSES	PER_LETTER_GEN_STATUSES
PER_ABSENCE_ATTENDANCE_REASONS	PER_ABS_ATTENDANCE_REASONS
PER_CONTACTS	PER_CONTACT_RELATIONSHIPS
PER_CLASSIFICATIONS	PER_SPECIAL_INFO_TYPES

Step 2: Update custom reports that reference HRV_ and OTV_ (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: Release 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

AutoUpgrade drops views that begin HRV_ and OTV_. If you have custom reports that refer to these views, amend them to reflect the new HRMS Intelligence views.

Step 3: Note location of custom script for Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: Release 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

The Salary Proposals view (formerly PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) is renamed to HRU_SALARY_PROPOSALS to make its name consistent with other views that can be customized. If you have customized this script, you need to reapply your changes. Run peupl01v.sql script from \$PER_TOP/admin/sql (UNIX) or %PER_TOP%\admin\sql (NT) to create the view. Check the absolute location of your customized script *before* the upgrade since PER_TOP points to the new code tree *after* upgrade.

Step 4: Update custom code for positions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: Release 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

Before Release 11i, position information was stored in two views in the PER_ALL_POSITIONS table: PER_POSITIONS and PER_POSITIONS_V1. In Release 11i, position information has been datetracked and information stored in the HR_ALL_POSITIONS_F table. New views, HR_POSITIONS_V and other standard datetracked views, now support datetracked positions. If you have created custom code that references the old position tables or views, you must update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Step 5: Update user-defined FastFormula definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: Release 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

In VARCHAR columns, dates are stored in canonical format (YYYY/MM/DD HH24:MI:SS format, instead of DD-MON-YYYY), and decimal numbers are stored using the decimal place character ("."), even for countries where a different character is standard (for example, France uses a comma).

With Oracle FastFormula, you can define database items or functions for use in any formula. If you have previously defined your own database items, you must change the item definitions and PL/SQL route definitions to reflect these changes.

To change database item definitions:

On any VARCHAR columns used to store numbers or dates, change ff_database_items.definition_text as follows: use fnd_number.canonical_to_number (instead of to_number) and fnd_date.canonical_to-date (instead of to_date). For example, a database item with definition text "to_number (EEV.screen_entry_value)" should be changed to "fnd_number.canonical_to_number (EEV.screen_entry_value)".

To change a route definition:

You must remove to_date (and DD-MON-YYYY) from any date context in ff_routes.text. For example, a route with text containing "and to_date(\&B1, 'DD-MON-YYYY') between EE.effective_start_date and EE.effective_end_date" should be changed to read "and \&B1 between EE.effective_start_date and EE.effective_end_date".

Step 6: Update Vertex geocodes data (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: Release 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

If you are using Vertex address validation data to validate your North American addresses, you must update your Vertex geocodes data by applying the HR 1999 Geocode patch (1105095) before you upgrade.

Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Update custom code for U.S. tax information (W4) changes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

If you have built custom code that references old tables or views, you must update it to reference the new datetracked ones.

Before Release 11, tax information was stored in descriptive flexfields in PER_ASSIGNMENT_EXTRA_INFO. There were three views: PAY_EMP_FED_TAX_V1, PAY_EMP_STATE_TAX_V1, and PAY_EMP_LOCAL_TAX_V1.

In Release 11i, the W4 information has been datetracked. There are four new tables:

PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_F	PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_F
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_F	PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_F

The following new views have been created to support datetracked W4:

PAY_US_EMP_FED_TAX_RULES_V	PAY_US_EMP_STATE_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_COUNTY_TAX_RULES_V	PAY_US_EMP_CITY_TAX_RULES_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_STATE_V	PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_COUNTY_V
PAY_US_EMP_TIME_IN_CITY_V	

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

The following Category 1 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are listed under a single heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Close discrete jobs and purge unneeded data – WIP (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > WIP

Step 1: Close discrete jobs and purge unneeded data – WIP (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (WIP)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10.7 and Release 11**

Users must log off: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

To make the upgrade process run faster, close all discrete jobs that you are no longer transacting and that you are prepared to close, and purge all unneeded discrete jobs and repetitive schedules.

To close discrete jobs:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. Then navigate to Discrete Jobs > Close discrete jobs > Close discrete jobs.

To purge unneeded discrete jobs and repetitive schedules:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the WIP function. To purge discrete data, navigate to Discrete Jobs > Purge Discrete jobs > Purge Discrete jobs.

To purge repetitive data, navigate to Repetitive > Purge Repetitive Schedules > Purge Repetitive Schedules.

Additional Information: Discrete Job Close, Discrete Job Purge and Repetitive Schedule Purge, *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7; Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 11*

Public Sector Product Family

The following Category 1 tasks are required or recommended to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred (required)	Application Specialist

Step 1: Ensure that transactions are summarized and transferred (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide	User must log off this application: No
Requires concurrent manager: Yes	

Ensure that all transactions are successfully summarized and transferred. See Chapter 12, Summarize Distribution Lines and Transfer Procedures, *Oracle Labor Distribution User's Guide*.

Category 2 — After You Receive the Software

This chapter describes Category 2 steps — they require unloading new files, but you continue to use your products at the existing release level after you perform these steps. Unless otherwise noted, perform steps that use a form from your "old" APPL_TOP, and steps that require a SQL*Plus script from your "new" APPL_TOP.

- Environment Preparation Tasks 2-2
- Database Upgrade Tasks 2-4
- System Administration Tasks 2-9
- Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks 2-11
- Oracle General Ledger Tasks 2-12
- Global Accounting Engine Tasks 2-16
- Oracle Payables Tasks 2-19
- Oracle Projects Tasks 2-23
- Oracle Purchasing Tasks 2-34
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks 2-37
- Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks 2-44
- Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks 2-45
- Oracle Human Resources Tasks 2-46
- Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks 2-47
- Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks 2-49

- Oracle Order Management Tasks 2-51

Environment Preparation Steps

Perform these steps to prepare your Oracle Applications environment for the upgrade.

Environment Preparation Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run Rapid Install (required)	Database Administrator
2. Apply consolidated upgrade patches (required)	Database Administrator
3. Export environment variables and add custom settings (required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Run Rapid Install (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator /System Administrator
Reference manual: Installing Oracle Applications	Users must log off: No

Rapid Install sets up your technology stack and creates all the necessary file systems for your middle tier components (APPL_TOP and Applications technology stack ORACLE_HOME), and creates the new ORACLE_HOME for your Applications database. It also performs all associated tasks such as relinking executables, and generating forms, reports, and message files.

Go to Chapter 1 of *Installing Oracle Applications* and follow the instructions in the Running Rapid Install section. Then, go to Chapter 4 and follow the steps to create a configuration file and directories for your upgrade. When directed to do so, return to the tasks in this book and continue with the upgrade.

Step 2: Apply consolidated upgrade patches (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator /System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Release Notes	Users must log off: No

Apply the consolidated AD patch and the consolidated family upgrade patches as listed in the most current version of the *Oracle Applications Release Notes*. You can obtain a copy of the release notes and the patches from [OracleMetaLink](#).

Step 3: Export environment variables and add custom settings (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator /System Administrator
Reference manual: Maintaining Oracle Applications	Users must log off: No

Rapid Install creates the APPSORA.env (UNIX) or APPSORA.cmd (NT) file, which sets up both the Applications and Oracle8i technology stack environment. This file is located in your APPL_TOP. To export the necessary environment variables, log in as the default Applications users and run this file from your new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX Bourne shell users:

\$. APPSORA.env

For NT users:

C:\> APPSORA.cmd

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Concepts; Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Rapid Install also sets environment variables (such as JAVA_TOP, OA_JRE_TOP, CLASSPATH, OAH_TOP, and OAD_TOP) in \$APPL_TOP/admin/adovars.env (UNIX), or in the NT registry and in %APPL_TOP%\admin\adovars.cmd. If you have customized variables in adovars, you may need to edit this file for all servers (except the database server) to define the JAVA_TOP, OA_JRE_TOP, CLASSPATH, OAH_TOP, and OAD_TOP and add any other customized settings, including custom application basepath variables.

Note: Settings in adovars.env or in adovars.cmd affect all Applications product groups using this APPL_TOP. If you wish to define database-specific customizations, you need to add logic to ensure it only executes for the relevant product group. UNIX users can also add the logic to the end of the main environment file, after the call to adovars.env. However they must re-apply this logic any time the main environment file is regenerated.

Database Upgrade Steps

Perform the steps for the Database Upgrade before you perform steps for Applications Technology products or any other product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Validate APPS schema(s) (recommended)	Database Administrator
2. Set up tablespaces (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Drop custom schemas that match APPS% (required)	Database Administrator
4. Verify custom index privileges (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
5. Drop conflicting custom public synonyms (required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Validate APPS schema(s) (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator /System Administrator
Reference manual: Maintaining Oracle Applications	Users must log off: No

To validate the integrity of your APPS schema(s) and identify existing invalid objects in your database, run advrf107.sql, which identifies potential problems and creates a baseline list of invalid objects. The list is in \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out/<APPS schema name>.lst (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%/admin/<dbname>/out/<APPS schema name>.lst (NT). Review this file to see if any corrective action is needed. You will also use it to compare the list of objects after the upgrade in Category 4, Step 11.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:

To run the script from the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @advrf107.sql <APPS username> \
  <AOL username>
```

To run the script from the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @advrf107.sql <APPS username> \
  <AOL username>
```

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:

Run the script by choosing Validate APPS Schema(s) from the Maintain Database Objects menu in AD Administration from your old APPL_TOP.

Additional Information: AD Administration, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 2: Set up tablespaces (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

If you have already upgraded your database to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release 8.1.7, set up your tablespaces for Release 11i.

Note: Do not convert tablespaces until you have upgraded to Release 8.1.7 of Oracle8i Enterprise Edition.

1. Convert tablespaces to local extent management

We recommend using local extent management to increase performance. To convert all non-SYSTEM tablespaces from Data Dictionary extent management to local extent management, run the following script:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls \
<SYSTEM password>
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adtbscnv.pls \
<SYSTEM password>
```

This script displays messages describing problems and suggesting manual fixes. Review the output (adtbscnv.lst), fix the indicated problems, and re-run the script until there are no more problems reported.

Additional Information: Managing Tablespaces, *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*

2. Create tablespace for new products and resize existing product tablespace

Run `adgntbsp.sql` to gather information about your current products and their tablespace sizes. The script requires a value for the `MODE` variable. `NEW` adds tablespaces for new products. `ALL` adds new tablespaces *and* increases the size of existing tablespaces so that they are minimally sized.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AD_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgntbsp.sql <MODE>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AD_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adgntbsp.sql <MODE>
```

Run `adcrtpsp.sql` (created by `adgntbsp.sql`) to resize your existing tablespaces and create new ones. First, review and customize the location of the data files listed in the script to suit your installation. Then, run `adcrtpsp.sql` from the Oracle8i Database server as the `SYSTEM` user.

Step 3: Drop custom schemas that match APPS% (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

AutoUpgrade automatically creates a schema named `APPS`, and may create additional schemas with names using `APPS` as a prefix. If you have created custom schemas that match `APPS%`, you must export or migrate these schemas and drop them so that there are no conflicts during the upgrade.

Additional Information: Export and Import, *Oracle8i Utilities*

To find schemas that match `APPS%`:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afcuscm.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afcuscm.sql
```

Attention: Do not drop any APPS schema installed by AutoUpgrade.

The afcuschm.sql script creates two files: afdrpusr.lst and afdrpusr.sql.

Review custom schema names:

The afdrpusr.lst file contains custom schema names. Export any names on the list before you drop them.

Note: Review afdrpusr.lst carefully to be sure only applicable custom schemas appear. Also be sure that all users that will be dropped are backed up prior to running the command.

Drop conflicting schemas:

Use afdrpusr.sql to drop conflicting schemas:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afdrpusr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afdrpusr.sql
```

Disable the ORACLE ID for each conflicting schema. As the System Administrator, navigate to the Register Oracle IDs window (Security > ORACLE > Register) and disable the privileges for each schema. Then, ensure that no data groups use this ORACLE ID. Navigate to Define Data Group (Security > ORACLE > DataGroup).

Additional Information: Register ORACLE IDs, Define Data Group, *Oracle Applications System Administration Reference Manual, Release 10 or Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11*

If you import your schemas under a new name after the upgrade, follow the instructions in Category 4, Step 12.

Additional Information: Impact on Custom Schemas, *Oracle Applications Concepts*

Step 4: Verify custom index privileges (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

If a schema owns a custom index on an Oracle Applications table, ensure that the schema has privileges to drop the custom indexes. The ODF Comparison utility may try to drop custom indexes when it maintains Oracle Applications tables. Use the following command to identify schemas that may cause problems:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afindxpr.sql
```

The afindxpr.sql script creates two files: afpregdi.lst and afpregdi.sql. The afpregdi.lst file lists the custom indexes that have a different owner and the table owner. If the file is empty, no further action is required. Use afpregdi.sql to grant DROP ANY INDEX privileges for any TABLE_OWNERS listed:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpregdi.sql
```

Step 5: Drop conflicting custom public synonyms (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

You must ensure that there are no public synonyms with the same name as an Oracle Applications schema. Also, there should be no public synonyms that conflict with default usernames for new products (such as, AK, AX, AZ, CE, and so on). If necessary, you can recreate these as private synonyms in a custom schema after the upgrade. To check for custom public synonyms that conflict, run this script:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afpubsyn.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afpubsyn.sql
```

The afpubsyn.sql script creates two files: afpredps.lst and afpredps.sql. Review afpredps.lst. If the file is empty, no further action is required. If there are conflicting synonyms, run the afpredps.sql script:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpredps.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @afpredps.sql
```

Applications Technology Products

Perform the steps in this section before you perform the product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Delete unsuccessful login data (recommended)	Technical Specialist
2. Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database (recommended)	System Administrator
3. Purge old concurrent requests (recommended)	System Administrator

Step 1: Delete unsuccessful login data (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

FND_UNSUCCESSFUL_LOGINS records unsuccessful login attempts to Oracle Applications. If you no longer need this information, you can delete all the rows from this table to improve performance. From the new APPL_TOP, run this script:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @afdtrn01.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @afdtrn01.sql
```

Step 2: Restrict access to administration directory – all servers except database (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

Some AutoUpgrade output, such as log and restart files, contains passwords to ORACLE accounts related to Oracle Applications, including the SYSTEM account. We recommend that you restrict access to the admin directory that contains these files. In general, users do not have direct access to *any* server machines used by Oracle Applications, so you need to protect the admin directories only in cases where users require access to the servers for other reasons.

Run this step from the new APPL_TOP. Repeat on all servers where you intend to run AutoUpgrade or AutoPatch.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP
$ chmod 700 admin
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%
C:\> attrib +R admin
```

Suggestion: Retain log and restart files online until you have implemented your products and tested them thoroughly. Oracle Support Services may need access to these files if you encounter problems implementing or using your system.

Step 3: Purge old concurrent requests (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
--	---

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

Users must log off: **No**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

You may want to run the Purge Concurrent Requests and/or Managers report, which purges concurrent requests. Run the report from the old APPL_TOP in either AGE or COUNT mode to purge concurrent requests based on the number of days old or the number of old requests to be retained. Choose Requests > Run to access the Submit Request window.

Additional Information: Purge Concurrent Request and/or Manager Data Program, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*

Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Indicate use of FlexBuilder process for Account Generator (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide, Oracle Workflow Guide**

Users should log off: **Yes**

Perform this step to use the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type. This process replicates your FlexBuilder customizations from Release 10.7.

AutoUpgrade scripts update your FlexBuilder rules. The Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process contains the logic from your custom FlexBuilder rules. It contains a function that retrieves the necessary item attribute values (corresponding to raw parameters in FlexBuilder) and calls PL/SQL functions to create the code combination. Apply patch 1570300, then run afffcfb.sql to see if there are any inconsistencies that will cause the upgrade to fail:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffcfb.sql
```

Review the output file (afffcfb.out) for data inconsistencies. You may be able to use the UPDATE statement in afffcfb.sql to fix the data. Note the following codes and meanings:

FB: FlexBuilder	KFF: Key Flexfield
Form-F: FNDFBRFP form (FlexBuilder functions)	Form-P: FNDFBMPA form (FlexBuilder parameters)
Responsibility: Application Developer	Responsibility: Application Developer
Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Function	Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Parameter
Form-A: FNDFBMAS form (FlexBuilder assignments)	Form-K: FNDFFMIS form (FlexBuilder segments)
Responsibility: Application Developer	Responsibility: System Administrator
Navigation path: Flexfield > FlexBuilder > Assign	Navigation path: Application > Flexfield > Key > Segments

Warning: Continuing with the upgrade without investigating and solving data inconsistencies may cause it to fail.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 2 tasks to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Review daily rates (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL) / Database Administrator
2. Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Review daily rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL) / Database Administrator
--	---

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide**, Users must log off: **No**
Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide

Attention: Perform this step if you maintain daily rates for more than one set of books with the same functional currency in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.

Prior to Release 11.0, a separate set of daily rates was maintained for each set of books. Now, a single set of daily rates is maintained for each Applications instance. If you have set up multiple sets of books in a single Release 11i Applications installation, you must use the same set of daily rates for each set of books.

Note: A *daily rate set* includes all the daily rates you've defined for specific combinations of foreign currency, rate type, and date.

During the upgrade, AutoUpgrade analyzes the daily rates maintained in each set of books within your Applications installation. For each date for which daily rates are maintained, it looks for rate conflicts — instances where the From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type are the same in more than one set of books, but where the daily rate differs.

If there are no conflicts, all the daily rates for that combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type from all of the sets of books are transferred into the new daily rate set for the Applications installation. If conflicts are found, no rates are transferred. This process is repeated for each combination of From Currency, To Currency, and Conversion Rate Type for which you maintain daily rates in your sets of books.

Attention: Descriptive flexfields defined for daily rates are not transferred during the upgrade, even if no daily rates conflicts are found. To retain descriptive flexfields, complete Category 5, Step 1.

In Category 5, Step 1, you will run a SQL*Plus script to migrate conflicting daily rates to the new table. The script requires you to specify one of two options for handling conflicts.

Caution: Review your daily rates carefully before the upgrade so you can resolve conflicts after the upgrade.

Option 1: Choose daily rates from 1 set of books to use for all sets of books

For example, assume there are two sets of books in one Release 10.7 Applications installation. Each maintains daily rates for converting German marks to U.S. dollars (DM to USD), rate type Corporate. Assume rates for the first five days of December 1999 are:

Day	Rate for Set of Books 1	Rate for Set of Books 2
01-DEC-1999	.5757	.576
02-DEC-1999	.5759	.576
03-DEC-1999	.5761	.576
04-DEC-1999	.5763	.576
05-DEC-1999	.5765	.577

The daily rates from Set of Books (SOB) 1 are more precise, so you might choose to use these rates for both sets of books. Your Release 11*i* installation will convert German marks to U.S. dollars using these rates. The SOB 2 rates are not retained.

Option 2: Migrate one set of rates to a new rate type

Using the same assumptions as the previous example, you can keep the daily rates from both sets of books by migrating one set of rates to a new rate type.

To review your daily rates before you upgrade:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report from your new APPL_TOP for summary information:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username> / <APPS password> @glurtrpp.sql
```

2. Review the report to see if any daily rates conflict.
3. Review any conflicting rates online in each set of books to identify the nature of the conflict. Alternatively, run the Daily Rates Listing for each set of books and compare the reports manually.

For example, you can instruct the post-upgrade script to migrate all the daily rates maintained in SOB 2 to a new rate type, Corp2. Then, you can instruct the script to migrate all daily rates maintained in SOB 1 to the rate type Corporate.

Note: The script you run to produce the Daily Rates Conflict report *after* the upgrade is different from the script in this step.

Step 2: Revise custom programs that automatically load daily rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Users must log off: No

Attention: Perform this step *only if* you currently use a custom process to load daily rates into Oracle General Ledger or Oracle Public Sector General Ledger Release 10.7.

This release contains an open interface table (GL_DAILY_RATES_INTERFACE) for automatically loading daily rates. If you use a custom process to automatically populate the GL_DAILY_CONVERSION_RATES table, you must modify the process to use the new interface table. After the upgrade, test your customized loading process to ensure the daily conversion rates are being loaded correctly.

Warning: Loading daily rates directly into the GL_DAILY_RATES table can corrupt your General Ledger data. This action is not supported by Oracle Corporation.

Additional Information: Entering Daily Rates, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update accounting data model (required)	Database Administrator
2. Ensure that all transactions are translated (required)	Application Specialist (Payables) / Application Specialist (Receivables)
3. Calculate balances (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
4. Close all accounting periods (required)	Application Specialist (Payables) / Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1: Update accounting data model (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

In prior releases, a transaction in your primary set of books could contain multiple accounting sequence IDs. However, transactions in your MRC reporting sets of books could contain only a single accounting sequence ID. With the new data model, you can assign categories to the same event types for both your primary and MRC reporting sets of books. Consequently, a transaction in your MRC reporting sets of books can now contain multiple accounting sequence IDs.

The upgrade to Release 11*i* provides complete functionality for this change. However, if you applied patch 1257205 (in patchset 11.0.AX.F, or later) in Release 11.0 to upgrade to the new accounting model, you need to apply patch 1746184 now to update your Release 11.0 files. Use Autopatch in pre-install mode.

To verify the status of the data model patch, type this command:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> desc AX_SLE LINES:
```

If the application_id and set_of_books_id columns exist and are reported as NOT NULL columns, you have upgraded to the new 11.0 accounting data model.

Additional Information: AutoPatch, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 2: Ensure that all transactions are translated (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables) /Application Specialist (Receivables)
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

Submit all events per application and set of books to the Posting Manager for translation. The concurrent log file in the Posting Manager provides an overview of untranslatable events. Check this file to ensure that there are no untranslatable events or events with the status of *Error*.

To list all events not translated by the Posting Manager, run axxpre01.sql from your new APPL_TOP. Untranslated events are ordered by application and set of books.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre01.sql
```

Review the axxpre01.lst output file for untranslated events and verify that events included in this list do not need to be translated.

Note: In Release 11i, AX translation rules now handle new data models in the subledger applications. Some event types are obsolete or have significantly changed. To ensure that existing transactions are accounted for using the existing translation rules, you must translate all transactions before you upgrade.

Step 3: Calculate balances (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

If you applied the balance calculation patch in Release 10.7, you can omit this step. If the balance calculation patch was not applied in Release 10.7, you must calculate the balances for all accounting lines before you upgrade to Release 11i.

Verify balance calculation patch:

To determine whether the patch was applied, run the following script from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpre02.sql
```

If the script reports that the balance calculation was upgraded, no further action is required.

Calculate balances:

If the script reports that the balance calculation was not upgraded, you must calculate the balances for all accounting lines.

1. Submit the balance reports.

Submit balance reports for the latest period for each application and set of books, *only* for those sets of books that use the Global Accounting Engine.

Report Name	Description
Supplier Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report run from the AX Payables Supervisor responsibility
Customer Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report run from the AX Receivables Supervisor responsibility
Organization Balance by Account/Accounting Flexfield	Accounting Flexfield report run from the AX Inventory Supervisor responsibility

Note that in Release 10.7, balances can run for only one year at a time. All balances for the year are recalculated each time that you run the report. If new transactions were created for a prior year, you must run a balance calculation for that year and again for each subsequent year.

2. Complete post-upgrade step.

You will update the accounting lines after the upgrade. See Category 5 Global Accounting Engine Tasks, Step 2.

Step 4: Close all accounting periods (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)
Reference manual: Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

For sets of books that use the Global Accounting Engine, close all prior periods in Oracle Payables, Receivables, and Inventory, and close all current and future periods to prevent transactions during the upgrade. Perform this step from your old APPL_TOP.

Additional Information: Closing an Accounting Period, *Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*; Opening and Closing Accounting Periods, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*; Maintaining Accounting Periods, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*

Additional Information: Close all accounting periods – Standard and Average Costing (required), Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks, Category 3, Step 6.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update supplier and supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Choose payment method for future-dated payments (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Enable recoverable tax option (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Update supplier and supplier site bank data for multiple supplier banks (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: No	User must log off: No

Complete this step only if you have existing supplier and supplier site remit-to bank information.

AutoUpgrade transfers supplier bank data from PO_VENDORS and PO_VENDOR_SITES_ALL tables to the AP_BANK_BRANCHES, AP_BANK_ACCOUNTS_ALL, and AP_BANK_ACCOUNT_USES_ALL tables. In this step, you run a report to identify bank data that you need to add to the supplier records so that the upgrade can create corresponding records in the banks tables. Then, you update the supplier records with the required data.

Review existing supplier information:

To review existing supplier and supplier site bank information that will be transferred from the supplier tables to the banks tables, run apmsbrep.sql from your new APPL_TOP in the database user you want to upgrade:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apmsbrep.sql
```

The script produces a report (apmsbrep.lst), which shows what the upgrade is going to do, including the supplier bank information to be transferred, the bank records to be created, and the records that will not be transferred because required values are missing. Review the report to determine whether to update supplier bank information before it is transferred.

Update supplier bank information:

Supplier bank information cannot be transferred with out a value for the following required columns: bank, branch, and account number. Update the information for these columns from the application window or by using the b747306a script.

For character-mode: use the Bank Accounts region of the Enter Vendor form (\Navigate Vendors Entry).

For GUI: choose Suppliers > Entry and use the Bank region of the Suppliers window. Then, choose Suppliers > Entry and click the Sites button. Use the Bank Accounts region of the Supplier Sites window to make the updates. After the upgrade, you cannot access bank information from the GUI Suppliers window.

Note: If you have a large number of supplier records that have no value for bank number and/or branch number, you may want to request patch 747306. It contains the script b747306a, which provides temporary values so the upgrade can transfer these records. It also contains b747306b, which you can run after the upgrade to reset the values to null.

Step 2: Choose payment method for future-dated payments (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: No	User must log off: Yes

Perform only if you use future-dated payments or manual future-dated payments.

In Release 11i, Future Dated and Manual Future Dated payment method types have been replaced with the Check, EFT (Electronic), Wire, or Clearing payment types. The apboepre.sql script populates a temporary table that the upgrade uses to update the future payment method on existing invoices, payments, and payment formats.

Enter the new payment method for the Future Payment method and for the Manual Future Dated payment method at the prompt. Run this script only once from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apboepre.sql
```

If you do not run this script, AutoUpgrade automatically replaces Future Dated with EFT (Electronic) and Manual Future Dated with Check.

Step 3: Enable recoverable tax option (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: No	User must log off: Yes

If you have NO recoverable tax in ANY operating unit, you may omit this step.

In order to set up recoverable taxes after the upgrade (Category 6, Step 3), you must set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials flag to Y now. This option affects the way tax lines are flagged as recoverable or nonrecoverable, the way accounting entries are created during the upgrade, and the way data is populated in Recovery Rate.

You must perform this task for any operating unit where tax has been considered recoverable (for example, VAT or GST) in the past, or will be in the future.

Add recoverable tax flag:

To add the NON_RECOVERABLE_TAX_FLAG column to the FINANCIALS_SYSTEM_PARAMS_ALL table, run apaltfsp.sql from your new APPL_TOP. You need run this script only once.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaltfsp.sql
```

Enable recoverable tax option:

Choose the appropriate script to set your Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes. When you set up recoverable taxes after the upgrade (Category 6, Step 3), your tax codes will be updated to be 100% recoverable and the TAX_RECOVERABLE_FLAG for each of your existing tax lines will be set to Y (100% recoverable).

Warning: You must set the Enable Recoverable Tax option to Y for all operating units that require recoverable tax. If you do not, accounting entries will be created incorrectly.

For single operating units that use recoverable tax, or multiple operating units that ALL use recoverable tax, run the following script *once* to update all operating units:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre2.sql
```

For multiple operating units with different tax recoverability structures, run the following script for *each* operating unit that uses recoverable tax:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apfspre1.sql <org_id>
```

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Correct the week ending date and month ending date for MLS (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
4. Correct credit memo invoice dates (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
5. Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
6. Correct billing hold data on reversing items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
7. Correct billable flag data for reversing items (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
8. Run data fix scripts (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1: Correct the week ending date and month ending date for MLS (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

You may receive a message while using the Copy Actuals function in the budget form that indicates the data contains an invalid month. The message is prefixed with ORA-01843. It occurs most often in an MLS environment because the WEEK_ENDING_DATE and MONTH_ENDING_DATE columns in the PA_TXN_ACCUM table are VARCHAR2 datatypes, but these columns store dates. In an MLS environment, the date stored in these columns may not be in the language used by the database instance as determined by NLS_DATE_LANGUAGE or NLS_LANGUAGE (if the NLS_DATE_LANGUAGE parameter is NULL).

To find the exceptions, run patxnerr.sql. This script creates a temporary table PA_TXN_ACCUM_ERR to store the records that are in error. From your new APPL_TOP, type the following commands:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnerr.sql <PA username> \
  <PA password> <APPS username> <APPS password>
```

Then, run patxnsql.sql.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsql.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @patxnsql.sql
```

The script produces a report called txn_fix.lst, which is stored in your current working directory. The report has two sections:

Section 1 begins with this text: “The following records have been updated in PA_TXN_ACCUM with the New_Week_Ending_Date and New_Month_Ending_Date”.

This section lists the records with the old and new values for the week_ending_date and month_ending_date columns.

Section 2 begins with the line “Please update the week_ending_date and month_ending_date for the following records in PA_TXN_ACCUM”. This section lists the records for which the WEEK_ENDING_DATE and MONTH_ENDING_DATE columns could not be updated.

You must update manually any records listed in Section 2. The month must be in the language of the database server instance. After making the corrections, run patxnsq1.sql again to ensure that corrections have been made. You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 2: Correct excess revenue amounts data for hard limit funded agreements (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step only if you have Project Billing installed.

The pa620118.sql script produces a list of the project/tasks whose revenue has exceeded the hard limit funding amount. This script may take a long time to run. From your new APPL_TOP, type:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa620118.sql
```

The script produces a report called pa620118.lst, which lists the project and task number, agreement number, and the amount by which revenue has exceeded the funding limit. To correct the data, create a write-off revenue event for each excess revenue amount listed in the report.

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 3: Correct excess revenue accrued for non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to non-adjusting negative amount expenditure items accruing overstated revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Oracle Projects now generates the correct revenue amount. Run pa661335.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa661335.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces a report called pa661335.lst, which lists the project and task number, expenditure type, quantity, and accrued revenue for all expenditure items where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the data, from your old APPL_TOP, enter a Recalculate Revenue adjustment for each of the expenditure items listed in the report.

- 1. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Expenditure Items window.
- 2. Query for the expenditure items you want to correct.
- 3. Choose Recalc Revenue from the Special menu.
- 4. Repeat this procedure for each of the listed expenditure items.

After you enter the Recalculate Revenue adjustments, run the Generate Draft Revenue process from the Submit Request window (Requests > Run) for each affected project.

Additional Information: Expenditure Adjustments, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 4: Correct credit memo invoice dates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

In prior releases, Projects allowed release of a credit memo with an AR invoice date earlier than the AR invoice date of the original invoice. Oracle Receivables rejected such credit memos during the AutoInvoice Process. Run pa652811.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report existing credit memos with an AR invoice date earlier than the original AR invoice date.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa652811.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces a report called pa652811.lst, which lists the project number, credit invoice number, original invoice number, credit memo date, and Oracle Receivables invoice number for all credit memos with an invoice date earlier than the original invoice date. To correct the data, update the AR Invoice Date for each credit memo in the report by following these steps from your old APPL_TOP:

1. Navigate to the Find Invoice window (choose Billing > Invoice Review).
2. Query for the credit memo you want to correct.
3. Change the AR Invoice Date to a date on or after the invoice date of the original invoice. You can make this change in the Invoice Summary window or by opening the credit invoice.
4. Repeat these steps for each credit memo in the report pa652811.lst.

Additional Information: Reviewing Invoices, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 5: Correct bill amount data stored on revenue distributions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

In prior releases, billing amounts were not stored in revenue distribution lines on “Accrue as work Occurs - Bill as work Occurs” projects. This resulted in the Oracle error “ORA-1400: cannot INSERT null value” during the Generate Draft Invoices process. Run pardlrpt.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report expenditure items that contain this error.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlrpt.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. Enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces an exception report called pardlrpt.lst, which lists the project name, task number, expenditure item ID, expenditure type, quantity, and amount for all expenditure items whose billing amounts should have been stored in the revenue distribution lines. If no exceptional expenditure items are reported, then your data is correct and you can ignore the remaining steps. To correct the data, run these steps from your old APPL_TOP.

1. Recalculate revenue

Perform Recalculate Revenue adjustments on the listed expenditure items. Choose Expenditures > Expenditure Inquiry, and enter criteria to find the expenditure items you want to adjust.

After you adjust the expenditure items, run the Generate Draft Revenue process, from the Submit Request window (Requests > Run), for each affected project.

2. Re-run the Exception report

Run `pardlrpt.sql` again. If any expenditure items are reported, go back to the previous step. Repeat these two steps until no expenditure items are listed.

3. Create temporary table

Run `pacrttab.sql`. This script creates the temporary table `pa_bug_644714`. The temporary table stores the following audit information about the updated revenue distribution lines:

<code>expenditure_item_id</code>	<code>line_num</code>
<code>creation_date</code>	<code>new_bill_amount</code>
<code>old_draft_inv_num</code>	<code>old_draft_inv_item_line_num</code>

To run the script, type the following commands from your new `APPL_TOP`:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacrttab.sql
```

4. Correct the data

Run `pardlupd.sql` from your new `APPL_TOP` to correct your data. It prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can run the script for a range of projects at a time, but be sure that you run the script for all projects.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pardlupd.sql
```

Additional Information: Expenditure Adjustments, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 6: Correct billing hold data on reversing items (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**

Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to manual reversals of expenditure items whose Bill Hold flag was set to Yes. Prior to this upgrade, these items were created with the Bill Hold flag set to No rather than Yes, and therefore the reversals could be invoiced. Run `painv.sql` from your new `APPL_TOP` to report expenditure items with this error.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @painv.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and an End Project Number. You can use these parameters to run the script for a range of projects at a time. *If you do this, you must still make sure that you run the script for all projects.*

The script produces an exception report called `painv.lst`, which has two sections:

- List of Projects Against Released Invoices. Lists project/top task bill amounts that are incorrectly invoiced where the incorrect invoices are already released.
- List of Projects Against Unreleased Invoices. Lists projects against which incorrect invoices exist, where the invoices are not yet released.

To correct the released invoices, create top task level events in the amounts shown in the report for the specified project/tasks. From your old `APPL_TOP`:

1. Choose Billing > Events select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window. Query for the project that you want to correct.
2. Choose New to display the Event Details window.
3. Enter the Task Number of the top task listed in the report.
4. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-On.

5. In the Bill Amount field, enter the amount listed in painv.lst for the project and task.
6. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields. Save your work.
7. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the report.

After you create the events, run the Generate Draft Invoices process for the affected projects.

To correct the unreleased invoices, run the datafix script pa858651.sql. This script sets the “bill hold” flag for the reversed expenditure items to Yes and regenerates the invoices for the projects listed. Run the script from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa858651.sql
```

Additional Information: Events, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 7: Correct billable flag data for reversing items (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

This step pertains to expenditure items that were adjusted from billable to non-billable or vice versa. Prior to this upgrade, when these expenditure items were reversed, the reversing expenditure items were created with the Billable flag set to the original value, rather than the adjusted value.

To correct the flag settings, run the reporting script pacstrev.sql. This script reports projects that have associated expenditure items in error and indicates which processes you need to run after you run the datafix script. Be sure that you run this reporting script (pacstrev.sql) before you run the datafix script (pa882573.sql), so that you know which processes to run after you correct the data.

To run the reporting script:

Type the following commands from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pacstrev.sql
```

The script produces an exception report (pacstrev.lst), which contains two sections:

- Cost Distribution needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the cost distribution processes after you run the datafix script.
- Revenue Distribution/Asset Accumulation needs to be run for the following projects. Lists projects for which you must run the Generate Draft Revenue process or the Generate Asset Lines process after you run the datafix script.

The report lists each project and the associated project type.

- If the project type indicates that the project is a contract project, you must run the Generate Draft Revenue process for the project after you correct the data.
- If the project type indicates that the project is a capital project, you must run the Generate Asset Lines process for the project after you correct the data.

To correct the data, run the datafix script pa882573.sql. You must enter starting and ending project numbers when the script prompts for these values.

This script corrects the Billable flag for the reversed expenditure items that are in error, and marks the items for cost recalculation (sets the COST_DISTRIBUTED_FLAG to N). The script also sets the REVENUE_DISTRIBUTED_FLAG to No if either of the following conditions is true:

- The expenditure item is charged to a capital project.
- The expenditure item is charged to a contract project with a revenue accrual method or invoicing method of Work, AND the original item was non-billable and has not been revenue distributed, AND the billable reversing item has been revenue distributed.

To run the datafix script:

Type the following commands from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa882573.sql
```

After you run this script, run the required cost distribution, revenue distribution, and asset line generation processes according to the exception report (pacstrev.lst). Use the Submit Request window (Requests > Run).

For the projects that require cost distribution and/or revenue distribution processes, run the Update Project Summary Amounts process. Use the Project Status Inquiry windows to verify the corrected amounts.

Note: The new billable and non-billable summary amounts generated after this datafix will be displayed in the earliest open period. This period may be different from the period in which the original expenditure item was reversed.

You must perform this step again just before you start the upgrade to correct any erroneous data that may have been created during normal processing.

Step 8: Run data fix scripts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle** User must log off: **No**
Projects Reference Manual

Run the data fix scripts to correct the revenue amount attributes for Cost Budgets and cost amount attributes for Revenue Budgets in the event these attributes are inconsistent. These scripts also correct the resource-related data that was not properly ungraded.

Run the following script to fix revenue amounts and cost amounts:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418823.sql \
    <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418823.sql \
        <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Run the following script to correct resource data from previous upgrades:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418828.sql \
        <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @a1418828.sql \
        <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Clear open interface tables (required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

Step 1: Clear open interface tables (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	User must log off: No
Requires concurrent manager: Yes	

You need to clear any unprocessed records in the Requisitions Open Interface, Purchasing Documents Open Interface, and Receiving Open Interface tables by importing the data into Purchasing. First, check to see whether data exists in the open interface tables. Then, clear the affected tables as necessary.

Determine whether data exists in the open interface tables:

1. Log in to SQL*Plus.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @
```

2. Run each of the following scripts:

```
pocntreq.sql
pocntpoh.sql
pocntrcv.sql
```

The first script is for the Requisitions Open Interface, the second for the Purchasing Documents Open Interface and the third for the Receiving Open Interface. If a script returns a number greater than 0, then you have data in that open interface. The following instructions tell you how to clear the data. If the script returns 0, no action is necessary.

Clear rows in the Requisitions Open Interface tables:

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import program. To make sure you process all data, you can leave the Import Source and Import Batch Identification fields blank.
2. Choose Reports > Run and submit the Requisition Import Exceptions report. Use this report to see if errors occurred while running Requisition Import. Correct errors and re-run Requisition Import until no more errors occur.

Additional Information: Requisition Import Process (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 10.7, 11, or 11i*); Requisition Import Exceptions Report (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 10.7, 11, or 11i*)

Clear rows in the Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables:

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program. Choose Reports > Run again and submit the Purchasing Interface Errors Report.
2. Review the Purchasing Interface Errors report and correct any errors. Re-run the Purchasing Documents Open Interface program until no more errors occur. If you are upgrading from Release 11.0.3, you can submit the Purge Purchasing Open Interface Processed Data program to remove all processed data in the

Purchasing Documents Open Interface tables. Note that this program does not remove data that is still pending.

Additional Information: Purchasing Documents Open Interface (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*); Purchasing Interface Errors Report (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*)

Clear rows in the Receiving Open Interface tables:

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, choose Reports > Run and submit the Receiving Transaction Processor. Then, submit the Receiving Interface Errors report.
2. Review the Receiving Interface Errors report and correct any errors. Re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.
3. If you have Advance Shipment Notices with billing information (ASBNs) in the Receiving Open Interface, choose Reports > Run in the Purchasing responsibility to submit the Purchasing Interface Errors report.

In the Parameters window, select Receiving Open Interface in the Source Program field. Use this report to see what errors occurred. Correct any errors and re-run the Receiving Transaction Processor until no more errors occur.

Additional Information: Receiving Transaction Processor (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 10.7, 11, or 11i*); Receiving Interface Errors Report (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*); Purchasing Interface Errors Report (*Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i*)

Note: If you cannot fix an error, examine the data that is in error. If it is old or obsolete, you may ignore the error and continue with the upgrade.

Country-specific Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 2 tasks to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Record truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)	All
2. Move government uniform invoice information for each organization (required)	Taiwan
3. Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)	Taiwan
4. Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)	Taiwan
5. Record uniform numbers for your company (recommended)	Taiwan
6. Record Canadian tax setup (conditionally required)	Canada
7. Print tax rebate and rule listings (recommended)	Canada

Step 1: Record truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: No	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

During the upgrade, lookup codes that are longer than 30 bytes are truncated and duplicate lookup code meanings are renamed. No seeded codes are affected. If your customized modules reference truncated lookup codes or renamed lookup code meanings, you may need to modify the migrated lookups or the customized modules accordingly in Category 4, Step 1.

Run this script from your new APPL_TOP to identify the lookup codes that will be truncated and lookup code meanings that will be renamed:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jamlsnck.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jam1smck.sql
```

Note: The upgrade does not migrate obsolete lookups. For more information, refer to the *Product Update Notes* for Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific.

Step 2: Move government uniform invoice information for each organization (required)

Perform for this country: Taiwan	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: No	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

All previous Oracle Financials for Taiwan windows are now obsolete. During the upgrade, export certificate and other government uniform invoice information, except miscellaneous invoices, is moved to either globalization flexfields or Oracle Receivables windows.

To record the existing government uniform invoice information, run `jatwupg1.sql` , and review the output (<Org ID>jatwupg1.lst).

To record existing government uniform invoice information:
Run `jatwupg1.sql` by typing:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg1.sql
```

To move government uniform invoice information:
All government uniform invoice attributes are assigned to transactions. Use the `jatwupg2.sql` script to migrate invoice format data. Run this script by typing:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username> /<APPS password> @jatwupg2.sql
```

Review output in <Org ID>jatwupg2.log after the script finishes.

The script performs the following actions:

- Updates only complete transactions in closed periods. If there are incomplete transactions in a current open period after the upgrade, you must enter a transaction source in the Transaction window.
- Moves government uniform invoice information defined in the Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts window to the Transactions window and its globalization flexfield. The following table shows the field mapping:

Release 10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Uniform Invoices/Sales Receipts)	Release 11i Field Name (Transactions)
Invoice Format	Invoice Format (hidden segment in globalization flexfield)
Uniform Invoice Word + Uniform Invoices/Sales No	Legacy Uniform Invoice (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Void	Status (base product field in the More alternate name region)
Wine/Cigarette	Wine/Cigarette (segment in the globalization flexfield)

Note: Because the transaction date will be used as the government uniform invoice date in Release 11i, the script does not migrate uniform invoice data.

- Moves export certificate information that was entered in the Define Zero-rate Uniform Invoices in Release 10.7 or 11.0 to the Transactions window globalization flexfield. The following table shows the field mapping:

Release 10.7 or 11.0 Field Name (Define Zero-Rate Uniform Invoices)	Release 11i Field Name (Transactions)
Number	Export Certificate Number (segment in globalization flexfield)
Name	Export Name (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Method	Export Method (segment in the globalization flexfield)
Export Date	Export Date (segment in the globalization flexfield)

Step 3: Move customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)

Perform for this country: Taiwan	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: No	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

In Release 10.7 and 11.0, customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were stored in the Tax Registration Number field in the Customers window. In 11*i*, the Customers window has both a Taxpayer ID and a Tax Registration Number field. You will use `jatwupg4.sql` to move the customer uniform number to the Taxpayer ID field, and `jatwupg3.sql` to record existing customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade.

To record existing customer uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:
Run `jatwupg3.sql` by typing:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg3.sql
```

Review the output in `jatwupg3.lst` and keep the file for your records.

To move customer uniform numbers:
Run this script to move customer uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) in the Tax Registration Number field to the Taxpayer ID field:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg4.sql
```

Review the `jatwupg4.log` file after the script finishes.

The jatwupg4.sql script overwrites the Taxpayer ID field in the Release 11*i* Customers window with data from the Release 10.7 or 11 Tax Registration Number field and makes the Tax Registration Number field blank.

Warning: *Do not run this script if you want to keep the existing data in the Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. Do not run this script if multiple countries share your database, as it updates all customer taxpayer ID information regardless of whether the information is entered in a Taiwanese responsibility.*

Step 4: Move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers (recommended)

Perform for this country: Taiwan	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: No	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

Previously, supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were stored in the globalization flexfield of the Suppliers window. In Release 11*i*, the Suppliers window contains both Taxpayer ID and Tax Registration Number fields. In this step, you will record existing supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers so you can redefine the numbers after the upgrade, and move the supplier uniform numbers from the Suppliers window globalization flexfield to the Suppliers window Taxpayer ID field.

To record existing supplier uniform numbers:

To run jatwupg5.sql, type:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg5.sql
```

Review output in jatwupg5.lst and keep the file for your records.

To move supplier uniform numbers and tax registration numbers:

Use the `jatwupg6.sql` script to transfer the supplier uniform numbers (taxpayer ID) from the Uniform Number globalization flexfield segment to the Taxpayer ID field of the Suppliers window. The script will not update the Taxpayer ID field unless it is blank, so you should make sure there is no data in this field.

Run this script to update the *blank* Taxpayer ID field with supplier uniform numbers:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jatwupg6.sql
```

Step 5: Record uniform numbers for your company (recommended)

Perform for this country: Taiwan	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Taiwan	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

In previous releases, uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) were defined in the System Options window globalization flexfield. In Release 11i, they are defined in the Locations window (Human Resources). You need to record these numbers so that you can re-enter them in Category 6, Step 1. To record the numbers, run the following script:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @JA_TOP/admin/sql/jatwupg7.sql
```

where `<dbname>` is the value of your `$ORACLE_SID` or `$TWO_TASK`.

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%JA_TOP%\admin\sql\jatwupg7.sql
```

where `<dbname>` is the value of your `ORACLE_SID` or `LOCAL`.

Review the output in `jatwupg7.lst` and keep the file to use after the upgrade. The `jatwupg7.lst` file is in `$APPLTOP/admin/<dbname>/out` on UNIX, and in `%APPLTOP%\admin\<dbname>\out` on Windows NT.

Additional Information: *Oracle Financials for Taiwan User's Guide*

Step 6: Record Canadian tax setup (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Canada	Perform if upgrading from: 10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) patch applied, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: No	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

Release 11i provides an integrated approach to meet Canadian tax requirements. Input Tax Groups (ITG), a new feature of the Enterprise Tax solution, replaces Release 10.7/11 Multiple Tax Distributions (MTD) functionality.

Run the `jacaupgr.sql` script to record your tax setup information. Review the `jacaupgr.lst` output file generated in the current working directory that you ran the script from. Use the information in the output file to set up Input Tax Groups.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacaupgr.sql
```

Additional Information: See the Upgrading to 11i appendix in the *Oracle Financials for Canada User's Guide* for more details.

Step 7: Print tax rebate and rule listings (recommended)

Perform for this country: Canada	Perform if upgrading from: 10SC Production 16.1 with Multiple Tax Distribution (MTD) patch applied, 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: No	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

To record your tax rebate and recovery rules, run `jacarmpr.sql`. It generates `jacarmpr.lst`, which displays tax rebate and recovery rules. You can use this information to define recovery rules.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacampr.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jacampr.sql
```

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update Swedish EFT payment format information (required)	Sweden
2. Pay Danish EFT invoices (conditionally required)	Denmark

Step 1: Update Swedish EFT payment format information (required)

Perform for this country: Sweden	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator	Users must log off: Yes
Reference manual: Patch 1094200 readme file	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

If you have not done so already, apply patch 1094200 to update payment format information and store in new fields the information for bank accounts that are assigned to suppliers that are paid with the Swedish payment formats and Swedish foreign payment formats.

To verify whether patch 1094200 has already been applied, check the version numbers of the formatting files. If the version numbers are greater than or equal to the versions listed in the following table, you *do not* have to apply the patch.

Formatting File	Version Number
JESEPBAI.sql	110.15
JESEPBSI.sql	110.11
JESEPBUT.sql	110.5
JESEPPOI.sql	110.15
JESEPPOU.sql	110.15

Warning: You must follow the instructions in the readme file carefully when you apply this patch. Perform the manual steps outlined in the readme *only* if you have *not* previously applied patch 1094200 — otherwise, your data will be corrupted.

Step 2: Pay Danish EFT invoices (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Denmark	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Product Manager (Financials for Denmark)	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Payables User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide	

Oracle Financials for Denmark has replaced the Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) payment process with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). If you have invoices that must to be paid with EFT rather than EDI, you must pay them now. After the upgrade, only EDI is available.

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure (required)	Brazil
2. Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL_BR_LOOKUPS (required)	Brazil

Step 1: Upgrade Brazilian subledgers data structure (required)

Perform for this country: Brazil	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator/Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)	Users must log off: Yes

Run jlbrsusl.sql to identify the fixes that are necessary for your installation. The results are displayed on the screen and included in the output file jlbrsusl.lst, located in \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out (NT), where <dbname> is the name of the database.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @JL_TOP/admin/sql/jlbrsusl.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your \$ORACLE_SID or \$TWO_TASK.

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%JL_TOP%\admin\sql\jlbrsusl.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

Step 2: Identify and correct duplicate rows in JL_BR_LOOKUPS (required)

Perform for this country: Brazil	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist	Users must log off: No

The upgrade moves the data in the JL_BR_LOOKUPS table to the FND_LOOKUPS table. For this move, row descriptions in the FND_LOOKUPS table must be unique up to the first 30 characters. When the upgrade runs, these lookups will be transferred and all descriptions will be truncated. Run jlmlsmck.sql to check for rows with the same description:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlmlsmck.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlmlsmck.sql
```

Review the duplicates on screen. To correct descriptions in the JL_BR_LOOKUPS table, from the Brazilian General Information responsibility, navigate to General > Setup > QuickCodes.

HRMS Product Family

Perform the following Category 2 tasks to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update taskflow definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Update taskflow definitions (conditionally required)Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **System Administrator**Reference manual: **No**Users must log off: **No**

If you have used apostrophe (') or percent (%) characters to create taskflow names or nodes, you must remove them before you upgrade. To identify taskflow names or nodes that contain these characters, run petskwrn.sql.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @petskwrn.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @petskwrn.sql
```

Manually delete any apostrophe or percent characters identified by the script.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

Perform the following Category 2 tasks to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are listed under a single heading.

Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **System Administrator**Reference manual: **No**Users must log off: **No**

Warning: The upgrade refreshes all e-Commerce Gateway seed data. Your current output interface data file definitions will be lost at that time.

The ECEUGR.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECELAYDR.sql (for Release 11.0) scripts generate a report of your output interface definitions before the upgrade. You can use these reports after the upgrade to restore your definitions. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

For Release 10.7:
Run ECEUGR.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

For Release 11.0:
Run ECELAYDR.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

Step 2: Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

Warning: The upgrade refreshes all e-Commerce Gateway seed data. Your current cross-reference data will be lost at that time.

The ECEUGR2.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECEXREFR.sql (for Release 11.0) scripts generate a report of your cross-reference definitions before the upgrade. You can use these reports after the upgrade to restore the definitions. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

For Release 10.7:

Run ECEUGR2.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

For Release 11.0:

Run ECEXREFR.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Find and correct items with no primary unit of measure - INV (required)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist
2. Purge unwanted transaction history - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory

Step 1: Find and correct items with no primary unit of measure - INV (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / Application Specialist (Inventory)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

Items with no primary unit of measure may cause the upgrade to fail. To find these items, run this script from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invuomch.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invuomch.sql
```

The output from invuomch.sql is written to invuomch.lis in the current directory. Correct items identified by assigning them a primary unit of measure. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to Items > Master Items. Use the Unit of Measure field in the Physical Attributes tabbed region.

Additional Information: Defining Items, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*

Step 2: Purge unwanted transaction history - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator/Application Specialist (Inventory)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

Upgrading large amounts of transaction history data can take a long time. To purge unwanted transaction data, run the following script from your new APPL_TOP:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxmpg.sql <purge cutoff date> \
  <organization code> <rows per commit>
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invtxnpq.sql <purge cutoff date> \
<organization code> <rows per commit>
```

The script requires three arguments:

Argument	Description
purge cutoff date	Only transactions before this date will be purged. The date must be in YYYY-MM-DD format. For example, 1992-01-29.
organization code	Only transactions in this organization will be purged. If you want to run the purge for several organizations, you must call the script once for each organization. You choose the organization code when you log in to Oracle Inventory.
rows per commit	Depending on how large your rollback segments are, you can vary the number of rows that are deleted per commit. The larger this number, the faster the purge, and the larger the rollback segment required.

Warning: Purged transactions do not appear on the Accrual Reconciliation report. Do not purge transactions you want to appear on this report (typically, purchase order receipt and return).

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run Order Entry Interface programs (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
2. Close eligible orders (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
3. Run Order Import program (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
4. Run AutoCreate Installed Base program for Services (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
5. Make sure orders are in a status supported by Order Management (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
6. Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
7. Run the Shipping Interface programs (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
8. Review Item Validation Org settings (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)

Checklist	Performed by
9. Validate inventory organization data (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
10. Review cycles that may not be upgraded (required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)

Step 1: Run Order Entry Interface programs (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 **Performed by: Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide **Users must log off: No**

All Order Entry interface tables must be empty before you upgrade to Order Management because the Order Management upgrade does not include data from interface tables (with the exception of the RMA interface table). To prepare the tables for the upgrade, run the following interface programs *in the order listed*:

- RMA Interface (Orders, Returns > Returns > RMA Interface)
- Receivables Interface (Orders, Returns > Receivables Interface)
- Inventory Interface (Shipping > Interfaces). Enter Inventory interface in the Name field.

Additional Information: *Oracle Order Entry Reference Manual, Release 10* (Vol. 1, pp. 6-20 to 6-23); *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping Release 11 User's Guide*, (Vol. 2, pp. 7-11 to 7-14)

- Demand Interface (Orders, Returns > Schedule > Place Demand via SRS)
- Service Interface (Orders, Returns > Service Interface)

Step 2: Close eligible orders (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 **Performed by: Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide **Users must log off: No**

Close all orders that are eligible for closing (even though the Close Eligible status is supported by the Order Management upgrade). Closing orders speeds up your upgrade. Select Orders, Returns > Close Orders from the menu.

Step 3: Run Order Import program (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

The Order Import Interface tables must be empty before the Order Management upgrade. Select Orders, Returns > Import Orders from the menu.

Step 4: Run AutoCreate Installed Base program for Services (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

To ensure that all data has been transferred out of the Order Entry Service Details Interface tables, change your responsibility to Service. Then, select Installed Base > AutoCreate Installed Base and run AutoCreate Install Base.

Step 5: Make sure orders are in a status supported by Order Management (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

Make sure Orders Headers and Order Lines are in a status that is supported by Order Management. The following table shows supported statuses. Workflow history is not created for closed lines or orders.

Seeded Action	Allowed Status (other than NULL and Not Applicable)	Status Not Allowed	Comments
The following information applies to Orders:			
Booking	All	N/A	N/A
Cancel Orders	5 - Partial, 11- Complete	18 - Eligible	N/A
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A
The following information applies to Order Lines:			
Pick Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A
Back Order Release	4 - Released, 5 - Partial, 18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A

Seeded Action	Allowed Status (other than NULL and Not Applicable)	Status Not Allowed	Comments
Ship Confirm	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 7 - Back-ordered Completed, 22 - Back-ordered Partial	18 - Eligible	Ship Confirm the Line
Receivables Interface	5 - Partial, 9 - Interfaced to AR, 18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A
Close/Complete	18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A
Inventory Interface	5 - Partially Interfaced, 14 - Interfaced	13 - Interface Error	Fix errors and run Interface program
Inventory Interface	N/A	18 - Eligible	Run Inventory Interface program
Cancel Line	5 - Partial, 11 - Complete	18 - Eligible	N/A
Service Interface	14 - Interfaced	18 - Eligible	Run the Service Interface program
Purchase Release	5 - Partial, 6 - Confirmed, 14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A
Manufacturing Release	18 - Eligible	4 - Released	Run the Auto-create config program
Manufacturing Release	19 - Work Order Completed	20 - WO partially completed	Complete work order
Manufacturing Release	N/A	21 - WO created	Complete work order
Manufacturing Release	N/A	23 - Configuration created	Run Auto-create Work Order program
Demand Interface	14 - Interfaced, 18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A
RMA Interface	14 - Interfaced, 16 - Partially Accepted, 17 - Completely Accepted, 18 - Eligible	N/A	N/A

Run `ontexc07.sql` to get a list (`ontexc07.lst`) of Order Entry Orders and Order Lines that are in cycle states that are not supported. The Cycle History of these orders is not upgraded to Workflow.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc07.sql
```

Step 6: Close open pick slips/picking batches or open deliveries/departures (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
Reference manual: Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide	Users must log off: No

For pick slip-based Shipping customers:

Back order or ship confirm all open pick slips and picking batches. Select Shipping > Ship Confirm by Pick List or Shipping > Ship Confirm by Batch.

For delivery-based Shipping customers:

Back order or ship confirm all open deliveries and departures. Select Shipping > Ship Confirm Deliveries or Shipping > Ship Confirm by Departures.

Step 7: Run the Shipping Interface programs (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
Reference manual: Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide	Users must log off: No

The upgrade does not take interface records into account, so all Order Entry data must be upgraded from the interface tables. Run the following programs and ensure that the interface tables are empty.

- Update Shipping program (Shipping > Update Shipping)
- Inventory Interface program (Shipping > Interfaces. Enter Inventory Interface in the Name field)
- Receivables Interface program (Shipping > Interfaces. Enter Receivables Interface in the Name field)

Step 8: Review Item Validation Org settings (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
Reference manual: Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide	Users must log off: No

When more than one responsibility is attached to an organization, the responsibilities must have the same item validation org settings to be supported by Order Management. Run ontexc05.sql to produce a listing (ontexc05.lst) of the item validation org settings. Use this list to determine which settings need to be changed.

If the valid item validation org is set at the user level, these values will not be upgraded.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc05.sql
```

Additional Information: *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide*

Step 9: Validate inventory organization data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **SQL*Plus User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

The wshpre00.sql script validates the following data for *inventory* organizations:

- All organizations in shipping parameters are defined and valid. They must also have an enabled subinventory.
- All organizations are assigned to locations.

To run this script, type the following:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $WSH_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %WSH_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshpre00.sql
```

Review the output file (wshpre00.lst). Shipping parameters records without valid organizations should be purged by your system administrator. Have your application specialist assign a quantity-tracked subinventory to any record that does not have at least one. In addition, the application specialist should define and assign an internal (HR) location for each inventory organization defined in your system that does not already have one.

Step 10: Review cycles that may not be upgraded (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry User's Guide** Users must log off: **No**

Order Entry cycles referenced by open orders are upgraded to workflow processes during the Order Management upgrade. Some cycles may not be upgraded successfully due to various reasons:

- the cycle definition is corrupt
- the cycle definition is not supported in Order Entry
- the cycle definition is extremely complex
- there is no exact functional equivalent in Order Management

The pre-upgrade script `ontexc08.sql` creates a list of cycles (`ontexc08.lst`) that cannot be upgraded and recommends actions that you may choose to take. If a cycle is not upgraded to Workflow, open orders referencing that cycle *will not* be upgraded. To run `ontexc08.sql`:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd $ONT_TOP\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc08.sql
```

Category 3 — Performing the Upgrade

This chapter describes the Category 3 steps — once you begin these tasks, you cannot use Oracle Applications until after you have successfully completed your upgrade. *All users must be logged off to perform these steps.*

- Oracle Alert Tasks 3-2
- Oracle Common Modules Tasks 3-3
- Oracle Workflow Tasks 3-4
- Oracle Payables Tasks 3-6
- Oracle Projects Tasks 3-9
- Oracle Receivables Tasks 3-11
- Oracle Common Countries Financials Tasks 3-14
- Oracle Human Resources Tasks 3-16
- Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks 3-16
- Oracle Order Management Tasks 3-20
- Oracle Purchasing Tasks 3-20
- Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks 3-22
- Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks 3-24
- System Administration Tasks 3-27
- Database Upgrade Tasks 3-29

Applications Technology Products

Perform the steps in this section to prepare your Applications Technology products for the upgrade.

Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Drop event alert triggers in custom schemas (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

Drop all event alert database triggers created in custom schemas. You will re-create the triggers after the upgrade in Category 6, Step 2. Run alrdtrig.sql from your new APPL_TOP.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @alrdtrig.sql
```

The script displays the following message and exits SQL*Plus:

"Rerun alrdtrig.sql, which is located in the preupg subdirectory of the admin directory under APPL_TOP, for each custom schema. If alrdtrig.sql has been run for all custom schemas, then open each [schema].sql (created by this script), which can be found in the current directory, and manually delete the drop trigger statements which do not belong. Then run the following statement for each schema: sqlplus apps_username/password @[schema].sql"

You should review the resulting [schema].sql files in your current directory and delete any drop trigger statements that do not belong. Log in to SQL*Plus and run each of the [schema].sql files to drop the triggers in each custom schema.

Oracle Common Modules Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Delete all AK data for Production 16 Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Fix invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	Application Specialist

Step 1: Delete all AK data for Production 16 Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 10SC Production 16	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

Data in Production 16 Global Demo databases is not supported in Release 11i. To remove all AK data when upgrading a Global Demo database, run the following script from your new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AK username>/<AK password> @akdelp16.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akdelp16.sql
```

Step 2: Fix invalid AK data in non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10SC Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

First check the databases to see if invalid AK data exists, then fix the data.

Fix data in a non-Global Demo database (10.7, Production 16.1 or higher):
Run the following script from your new APPL_TOP to check for invalid data:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkp16.sql
```

The script generates akchkp16.rpt. Review it for invalid data. Use the appropriate Oracle Applications forms to correct invalid data. Continue to run the script (from your old APPL_TOP) and make corrections until there is no invalid data.

Fix data in a Release 11.0 database:

Run the following script from your new APPL_TOP to check for invalid data:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @akchkr11.sql
```

The script generates akchkr11.rpt. Review it for invalid data. Use the appropriate Oracle Applications forms to make corrections. Continue to run the script (from your old APPL_TOP) and make corrections until there is no invalid data.

Oracle Workflow Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update protection and customization levels of seeded item types (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Workflow)

Step 1: Update protection and customization levels of seeded item types (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator / Application Specialist (Workflow)
Reference manual: Oracle Workflow Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Prior versions of Oracle Workflow included seeded item types. If you customized these seeded objects, the new seed data may not load properly when you use the

Workflow Definitions Loader. For every item type currently seeded in your database, you can take one of the following actions:

Action	Result
Do nothing.	Preserves the existing protection and customization levels of seeded objects and guarantees that any customizations made to the seed data (and chose to preserve) are not overwritten.
Run wfprotrst.sql for selected seeded item types to reset the protection and customization levels.	<p>Resets the protection and customization level for the selected item type. The result of this action is that the Release 11<i>i</i> upgrade is guaranteed to load. Note that if you run this script, any prior customizations to the seeded item type will be lost, but any new data that you may have added to the item type will be preserved during the upgrade. To run the script, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:</p> <p>For UNIX users:</p> <pre>\$ cd \$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg \$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> \ @wfprotrst <item_type></pre> <p>For NT users:</p> <pre>C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> \ @wfprotrst <item_type></pre>
Run wfrmitt.sql for selected seed item types.	<p>Completely deletes the item type and any associated customizations from the database, so that the corresponding seed item type in the Release 11<i>i</i> upgrade looks like a new installation. You should consider this option only if you have never used the item type in your production environment. To run the script, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:</p> <p>For UNIX users:</p> <pre>\$ cd \$APPL_TOP/admin/preupg \$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfrmitt</pre> <p>For NT users:</p> <pre>C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wfrmitt</pre>

Additional Information: Workflow Administration Scripts, *Oracle Workflow Guide*; Oracle Workflow Access Protection and Using the Workflow Definitions Loader sections, *Oracle Workflow Guide*.

To determine your item types, type the following at any prompt:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> select ITEM_TYPE from WF_LOOKUP_TYPES
```

Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 3 tasks to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update existing payment records (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Determine exchange rates (MRC) (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
4. Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
5. Transfer all data to General Ledger (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Update existing payment records (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0.2 or later	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: No	User must log off: No

If any payments have been entered using Payables 11.0.2, run b1275619.sql on your database. This script is included in stand-alone patch 1275619, available on *OracleMetaLink*. To run the script, log in as the apps user.

Do not perform this step if you have *never* installed Oracle Applications Release 11.0.2, or if your *first* installation was after 11.0.2.

Step 2: Determine exchange rates (MRC) (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications	Users must log off: Yes

You will need certain exchange rates to upgrade existing AP/MRC data for the new accounting data model. To determine these exchange rates, run apumccur.sql. Running this script has no effect on Receivables, as the script gets Payables exchange rates only for exchange rate fields that did not exist before the upgrade. Run this script for each APPS schema (from the new APPL_TOP). The instructions in the script indicate which daily rates combinations *must* be defined.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apumccur.sql
```

You define the rates from the GL responsibility. Navigate to Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily. Rerun the script and enter missing rates until the report is clean.

Additional Information: Entering Daily Rates, *Oracle Applications General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 3: Import and purge Payables Open Interface invoices (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Open Interface Import (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11 or 11i)	User must log off: No

Import and purge all invoices that are in the Payables Open Interface tables.

1. As the Payables Manager, choose Invoices > Entry > Open Interface Invoices.
2. Query all invoices and note the ones that have a null value in the Status field. These invoices need to be imported.
3. To submit the Payables Open Interface Import program, choose Requests > Run. Select Single Request and choose OK. Type *Payables Open Interface Import* in the Request Name field. Enter each source in the Parameters window, choose Yes for the Purge parameter, and click Submit Request.
4. Each time the import process completes, Payables automatically produces the Payables Open Interface report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the import program until you have imported all outstanding invoices.

- 5. To purge invoice data that has been imported successfully but which remains in the tables. Choose Requests > Run, select Single Request, and choose OK. Type Payables Open Interface Purge in the Request Name field and click Submit Request.

Step 4: Import and purge Invoice Import Interface expense reports and invoices (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Submit Invoice Import, (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 10.7); Payables Invoice Import Program, (Oracle Payables User's Guide, Release 11)	User must log off this application: No

Import and purge all invoice and expense report records that are in the Payables Invoice Import interface tables.

- 1. Run the following script from your new APPL_TOP to identify invoice and expense report records that you need to import:

For UNIX users:


```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg  
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
```


For NT users:


```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg  
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apuinimp.sql
```
- 2. The script produces apuinimp.lst, which lists for each operating unit any sources for which you need to import records and the number of records that need to be imported. If there are no records listed, this step is complete. If there are records listed, you need to import them.
- 3. In Payables, import the records for each operating unit.
 - If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form in your old APPL_TOP. For each source, submit import and enter today as the purge date.
 - If you are upgrading from GUI, choose Other > Requests > Run in your old APPL_TOP. In the Submit Request window, select Single Request and choose OK. Submit the Payables Invoice Import program for each source, and enter today as the purge date.

4. Each time the import process is complete, Payables automatically produces the Payables Invoice Import Exceptions report. Review each report, resolve any outstanding exceptions, and resubmit the Payables Invoice Import program until you have imported all outstanding records.
5. Purge any remaining records that have been imported successfully but still remain in the tables. Perform these steps from your old APPL_TOP.
 - If you are upgrading from character-mode, navigate to the Submit Invoice Import form. Enter the current date as the purge date.
 - If you are upgrading from GUI, submit Payables Invoice Import with a purge date and a user-defined source. Payables automatically purges all successfully imported records, regardless of source.

Step 5: Transfer all data to General Ledger (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Oracle Payables (or Government Payables) Reference Manual, Release 10.7 or Oracle Payables (or Public Sector) User's Guide, Release 10.7 or Release 11	User must log off this application: No

All data in Oracle Payables must be transferred to the General Ledger. If you are using MRC, all reporting sets of books data must be transferred as well.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Back up custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Submit and obtain approval for all timecards entered in PTE or Project Time and Expense (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step if you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) in Release 10.7 or Project Time and Expense in Release 11.0 to enter timecard information.

PTE and Project Time and Expense are no longer supported. Timecard entry is now performed in the Self-Service Time application. You will implement Self-Service Time in Category 6, Step 1. Submit all timecards that have been entered in your existing application and obtain approval for each one. After you perform this step, do not enter any more timecards until after the upgrade.

Additional Information: *Oracle Personal Time and Expense System Administrator's Guide; Oracle Project Time and Expense User's Guide*

Step 2: Correct excess revenue accrued for negative amount events (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed, and all the following conditions apply: you have not applied patchset D (Release 10.7), you have not upgraded to Release 11.0.2 or later, and you have not applied the stand-alone patch 634580. If you have applied any of these patches, patch sets, or upgrades, do *not* perform this step.

This step pertains to negative amount events accruing overstated revenue amounts during the Generate Draft Revenue process. Projects now generates the correct revenue amounts. Run pa634580.sql from your new APPL_TOP to report existing overstated revenue.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa634580.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number. You can enter a range of projects to reduce processing time. The script produces a report called pa634580.lst, which lists the project and task number, event number, and the event amount for all events where revenue is accrued beyond the soft limit. To correct the data, create a revenue write-off event for each overstated amount, following these steps from your old APPL_TOP:

1. Choose Billing > Events and select either Project or All to navigate to the Find Project Events window.
2. Query for the project you want to correct.
3. Choose New to display the Event Details window.
4. Enter the Task Number (if you want to create a task level event).
5. Select an Event Type that has an event classification of Write-Off.
6. In the Revenue Amount field, enter the amount listed in pa634580.lst for the project and task.
7. Complete the Event Date, Organization, and Description fields and save your work.
8. Repeat these steps for each overstated amount on the pa634580.lst report.

After you create the required revenue write-off events, run the Generate Draft Revenue process from the Submit Request (Requests > Run) window for each affected project.

Additional Information: Events, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 3: Back up custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: **No**

Users must log off: **Yes**

Back up any custom client extension packages and views you have created. You will reinstall them in Category 5, Step 12. Run the backup from your old APPL_TOP.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop tax vendor synonyms (conditionally required)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)
2. Diagnose and correct pre-existing database problems (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1: Drop tax vendor synonyms (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)
Reference manual: Integrating Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System; Integrating Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum	Users must log off: No

Complete this step if you have ever used a third-party tax vendor, such as Taxware or Vertex.

The synonyms to tax views that were required to use third-party vendors are no longer needed. You now select tax vendors using the Tax tabbed region of the System Options window. Run the following script to drop the obsolete synonyms:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vds.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vds.sql
```

Additional Information: Set up System Options, *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System* or *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum*

Step 2: Diagnose and correct pre-existing database problems (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator / Application Specialist (Receivables)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

Inconsistent Receivables data may cause some Receivables upgrade scripts to fail. This step explains how to diagnose your data and fix inconsistencies.

Run the diagnosis script:

Run the diagnosis script, ar115chk.sql. The input parameter is the value of the utl_file_dir parameter. Running this script will not affect your data in any way.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115chk.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115chk.sql
```

The output is written to utl_file_dir/ar115chk.log. It lists the following types of inconsistencies, as well as the action you need to take:

- Applications that have Earned Discounts but do not have an Earned Discount account.
- Applications that have Unearned Discounts but do not have an Unearned Discount account.
- Applications that have a Receivable Account that does not exist in Receivables but is required to create the Gain, Loss, or Currency Round accounting.
- Approved Adjustments for which the corresponding Transactions do not exist.

Fix inconsistent data:

You have two options:

1. Manually fix inconsistent data listed in the script output files.
2. Run ar115upd.sql to automatically update the missing (null) discount accounts with temporary accounts having a -1 code combination. This script also accurately derives the Receivable accounts needed for Gain, Loss, or Cross Currency Rounding accounting creation, if they are missing. This derivation comes from the original transaction's Receivable account. The input parameter is the value of the utl_file_dir parameter. The output is written to utl_file_dir/ar115upd.log.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115upd.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115upd.sql
```

WARNING: Do not proceed with the upgrade until you have addressed all inconsistent data either manually, or by using ar115upd.sql. You will know you have fixed all inconsistent data when ar115upd.log is blank.

Identify changed records (optional):

If you run ar115upd.sql, you may want to identify each record that was changed. To see a list of the changed records, execute the following SELECT statement at any time *after* you complete the upgrade.

```
SELECT    receivable_application_id,
          cash_receipt_id,
          earned_discount_taken,
          earned_discount_ccid,
          unearned_discount_taken,
          unearned_discount_ccid
FROM      ar_receivable_applications_all
WHERE     status = 'APP'
AND       NVL(confirmed_flag,'Y') = 'Y'
AND       ((NVL(earned_discount_taken,0) <> 0
            AND
            earned_discount_ccid = -1
            )
            OR
            (NVL(unearned_discount_taken,0) <>0
            AND
            unearned_discount_ccid = -1
            )
            );
```

Country-specific Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 3 tasks to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Common Countries Financials Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit (conditionally required)	Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, Switzerland

Step 1: Partition EFT system formats information by operating unit (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Germany, Netherlands, Norway, Sweden, and Switzerland** Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Database Administrator** Users must log off: **Yes**

Perform this step only if you are already using Multi-Org functionality.

You must partition the JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS table before it is converted to Multi-Org. To do this, you assign your existing data to an appropriate operating unit so that it is accessible. This is a two-step process. Perform *both* steps for *each* installation of Oracle Payables.

To add the ORG_ID column to JG_ZZ_SYSTEM_FORMATS:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper1.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper1.sql
```

To partition the existing data by operating unit, run jgzzper2.sql once for every combination of country code and EFT type that exists in the database until each entry is assigned to an operating unit.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @jgzzper2.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzper2.sql
```

HRMS Product Family

Perform the following Category 3 tasks to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Remove triggers specific to PayMIX (required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Remove triggers specific to PayMIX (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No** Users must log off: **Yes**

Apply patch 1276902 to remove the following PayMIX triggers: PAY_PDT_BATCH_CHECKS_WHO and PAY_PDT_BATCH_HEADERS_WHO. This is necessary to avoid contention between existing scripts during the upgrade. Perform this step *before* you shut down your system for the upgrade. Removing the triggers too soon will disable PayMIX processing.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

Perform the following Category 3 tasks to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are listed under a single heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Complete physical inventories in process - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
2. Process data in temporary and interface tables - INV (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
3. Verify that no uncosted transactions exist – Standard and Average Costing (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
4. Run inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
5. Run WIP Value report – Standard and Average Costing (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
6. Close all accounting periods – Standard and Average Costing (required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

Step 1: Complete physical inventories in process - INV (recommended)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**Users must log off: **Yes**

Follow the instructions in the Processing Physical Inventory Adjustments section of the *Oracle Inventory User's Guide* to complete any physical inventories in process. Enter tag counts and perform adjustments for each unfinished process. Perform this step from your old APPL_TOP.

Step 2: Process data in temporary and interface tables - INV (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide**Users must log off: **Yes**

Before you perform this step, make sure the background processor is running.

1. Navigate to Inventory > Setup > Transactions > Interface Managers.
2. From the Special menu, choose Launch Managers for each manager.

Complete transactions so that no information remains in the temporary (MTL_MATERIAL_TRANSACTIONS_TEMP) table or in the interface tables (MTL_TRANSACTIONS_INTERFACE and MTL_DEMAND_INTERFACE). Run these steps from your old APPL_TOP.

To view pending transactions:

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Inventory function. Navigate to the Find Pending Transactions window (Transactions > Pending Transactions).
2. Enter search criteria for the pending transactions you want to view.
3. Choose Find to start the search. The results display in the Pending Transactions window.
4. Select a tabbed region to display a type of information: *Error*, *Location*, *Source*, *Intransit*, or *Other*.

To resubmit transactions to the demand manager for processing:

1. In the Pending Transactions window, select Submit for each transaction you want to resubmit, or choose Resubmit All from the Special menu.

2. Save your work.

Additional Information: Overview of Inventory Transactions,
Oracle Inventory User's Guide

Step 3: Verify that no uncosted transactions exist – Standard and Average Costing (required)

Perform if upgrading from: Release 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Cost Management)
Reference manual: Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Oracle Inventory User's Guide, and Oracle Work in Process User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

To verify that no uncosted transactions exist, check material inventory transactions and WIP pending resource transactions.

If upgrading from Release 10.7 and 11.0:

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to View Transactions > MTL Transactions. Then choose the WIP function, and navigate to Pending Resource Transactions. Perform this step from your old APPL_TOP.

If upgrading from Release 10.7 (character-mode):

See View Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10*, for more information.

If upgrading from Release 10.7NCA:

See View Pending Transactions, *Oracle Inventory Reference Manual, Release 10SC*, for more information.

Step 4: Run inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Inventory)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

To prepare for installing this release, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory transactions, run the Elemental Value report, the Subinventory Value report, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value report. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost responsibility under your old APPL_TOP. Navigate to Reports > Value. At a minimum, run these reports sorted by item and by subinventory. In the Category 5, Step 2 , you will run other

inventory valuation reports, and compare your Release 10.7 or Release 11 inventory balances with Release 11*i* balances.

Step 5: Run WIP Value report – Standard and Average Costing (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Inventory or Cost Management)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle Inventory User's Guide and Oracle Cost Management User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes
--	--------------------------------

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

In preparation for an upgrade, you need certain validation totals. After you have completed your inventory and work in process transactions, run the WIP Value report for your latest accounting period. At a minimum, run this report for all jobs and repetitive schedules using the class sort and job/schedule sort. Use your old APPL_TOP.

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Report > Value (WIP Value report).
2. Choose Single Request or a Request Set (the Submit Request window appears).
3. In the Name field, select WIP Value Report (the Parameters window appears).
4. Enter the report parameters and choose OK (returns to the Submit Request window).
5. Choose Submit to run the WIP Value Report.

Additional Information: WIP Value Report, *Oracle Work in Process Reference Manual, Release 10.7 or 11.*

In Category 5, Step 3, you will run this report again and compare your Release 10.7 or Release 11.0 with the associated Release 11*i* balances. If you are upgrading from Oracle Work in Process, Release 10.7 10SC, see WIP Value Report in the *Oracle Work in Process User's Guide, Release 10SC*.

Step 6: Close all accounting periods – Standard and Average Costing (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Inventory)
--	---

Reference manual: Oracle Inventory User's Guide or Oracle Cost Management User's Guide	Users must log off: Yes
---	--------------------------------

Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

Closing accounting periods summarizes costs based on transactions. Closing periods is *required for sets of books that use the Global Accounting Engine*. And, it is highly recommended for all sets of books.

Additional Information: Close all accounting periods (required), Global Accounting Engine Tasks, Category 2, Step 4.

As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose the Cost function. Navigate to Accounting Close Cycle > Inventory Accounting Periods. If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 10SC, see Period Close, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, Release 10SC*.

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10 (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)

Step 1: Repeat Category 2 steps 1 – 10 (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)
Reference manual: Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User's Guide	Users must log off: No

If you have not yet performed the Order Management Category 2 steps, or if you have processed new transactions since you completed the steps, you need to perform them now to prepare data in the interface tables for the upgrade.

Additional Information: Oracle Order Management Tasks, Chapter 2.

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Modify default MRP profile options (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
2. Drop ICX index (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Modify default MRP profile options (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **Release 10.7NCA, 10SC**Performed by: **Applications Specialist
(Purchasing) / System Administrator**Reference manual: **No**Users must log off: **Yes**

If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, you can omit this step. You can also omit this step if you used AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7 *character-mode*, as the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window will not be available until after the upgrade. Character-mode installations will set these profile options in Category 5, Step 3.

To accommodate the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries in this release, AutoUpgrade assigns default profile option values for MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set. You may want to modify these defaults to suit your individual business needs.

If you choose to modify the MRP profile options, navigate to the System Profile Values window in the System Administrator responsibility (from your old APPL_TOP). Query for MRP: Sourcing Rule Category Set and MRP: Default Sourcing Assignment Set to make sure that values are provided at the Site level.

To modify MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set:

You may want to set the MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set profile option to the name of the category set used by Purchasing, or to any other category set you require. To find the Purchasing category set: from the Purchasing responsibility, choose Setup > Items > Categories > Default Category Sets. Use the Category set name that appears next to the Purchasing Functional area.

To modify MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set:

You may want to set the MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set profile option to the assignment set that is to be used by Purchasing. If you already have a sourcing rule assignment set, you can choose that it for this profile option value. If you do not have an assignment set, use the Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments window to create one. From the Purchasing responsibility, choose Supply Base > Assign Sourcing Rules. Create an assignment set name and save it. Then choose this assignment set name in the MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set profile option.

Attention: Purchasing uses just one assignment set — the one indicated in this profile option. Therefore, AutoUpgrade assigns all of your newly created sourcing rules to the assignment set name indicated in this profile option.

Additional Information: Automatic Sourcing, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

Step 2: Drop ICX index (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

Perform this step only if you have installed any version of Web Requisitions or Self-Service Purchasing version 4.0 or earlier.

Apply patch 1276916 to drop the index ICX_POR_CATEGORY_DATA_SRCS_N2 (on the ICX_POR_CATEGORY_DATA_SOURCES table) from the database. You can obtain this patch from Oracle*MetaLink*.

Public Sector Product Family

Perform the following Category 3 tasks to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Run costing and funds check procedures (required)	Applications Specialist (Grants)
2. Run the update awards summary (required)	Applications Specialist (Grants)
3. Rename the Grants Accounting tables (required)	Database Administrator/System Administrator
4. Run data correction script (required)	Database Administrator/Applications Specialist (Grants)

Step 1: Run costing and funds check procedures (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Grants)
Reference manual: Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide	User must log off this application: Yes
Requires concurrent manager: Yes	

Run the GMS costing and funds check procedures for expense reports, straight time labor, and usage. For information on how to run these procedures, see the following

sections in Chapter 33, Processes and Reports Procedures, *Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide*:

- **GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Expense Reports Expenditure Items Procedure**
- **GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Straight Time Labor Procedure**
- **GMS: Costing and Funds Check on Usages and Miscellaneous Costs Procedure**
- **GMS: Distribute Supplier Invoice Adjustment Costs and Funds check**

Step 2: Run the update awards summary (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist or Technical Specialist (Grants)
Reference manual: Oracle Grants Accounting User's Guide	User must log off this application: Yes
Requires concurrent manager: Yes	

Run the GMS generate draft invoices for a range of awards procedure. For information on how to run this procedure, see the following sections:

- For Release 10.7, see **GMS: Update Award Summary Amounts for a Range of Awards Procedure**, Chapter 33, Processes and Reports, *Oracle Grants Management User's Guide*.
- For Release 11, see **GMS: Update Award Summary Amounts for a Range of Awards Procedure**, Chapter 39, Processes and Reports Procedures, *Oracle Grants Management User's Guide*.

Step 3: Rename the Grants Accounting tables (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator/System Administrator
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

After you complete Steps 1 and 2, run the following SQL*Plus script to rename the GMS_IMPLEMENTATIONS and GMS_AWARDS tables to support multiple organizations architecture:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GMS_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupmod.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GMS_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupmod.sql
```

Step 4: Run data correction script (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: DBA or Applications Specialist (Grants)
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

Run gmsupcdc.sql to prepare the data for the upgrade. This script performs the following tasks:

- Updates the billable_flag in the PA_COST_DISTRIBUTION_LINES table to Y for expenditure_item_ids in the GMS_EVENT_INTERSECT table.
- Inserts the records in the GMS_EVENT_INTERSECT and GMS_BURDEN_COMPONENTS tables that cannot be processed by the billing upgrade process into the GMS_UPGRADE_GEI_ERRORS and GMS_UPGRADE_GBC_ERRORS tables.
- Marks the expenditure_item_ids for these error records as negative in the GMS_EVENT_INTERSECT and GMS_BURDEN_COMPONENTS tables so that they are not picked up during the upgrade.

To run gmsupcdc.sql:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GMS_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupcdc.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GMS_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsupcdc.sql
```

Review the GMS_UPGRADE_GEI_ERRORS and GMS_UPGRADE_GBC_ERRORS tables for errors. If error conditions exist, contact Oracle Support Services.

Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop obsolete seed data (required)	Technical Specialist
2. Drop obsolete database objects (required)	Technical Specialist

Checklist	Performed by
3. Upgrade menus (required)	Technical Specialist
4. Drop indexes (required)	Technical Specialist

To upgrade from Version 3.3 of Oracle U.S. Federal Financials, users must apply Patch Set F or higher.

Step 1: Drop obsolete seed data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 2.0, 3.3	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

For Version 2.0, all concurrent programs, executables, value sets, request sets, descriptive flexfields, and profile options owned by U.S. Federal Financials are removed. For Version 3.3, all request sets, obsolete and updated concurrent programs and executables, and updated profile options owned by Oracle U.S. Federal Financials are removed.

Delete the obsolete seed data by running the appropriate script and checking the log file for errors:

Version 2.0:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvapi107.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvapi107.sql
```

Review the log file (fvapi107.log) for errors.

Version 3.3:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvapi110.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvapi110.sql
```

Review the log file (fvapi110.log) for errors.

Step 2: Drop obsolete database objects (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 2.0, 3.3	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

Drop obsolete database objects by running the appropriate script and checking the log file for errors:

Version 2.0:
For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupg107.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupg107.sql
```

Review the log file (fvupg107.log) for errors.

Version 3.3:
For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupg110.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupg110.sql
```

Review the log file (fvupg110.log) for errors.

Step 3: Upgrade menus (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 2.0, 3.3	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

Update the owner of the Oracle U.S. Federal Financials menus by running the correct version of the following script and checking the log file for errors:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdmnu.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdmnu.sql
```

Step 4: Drop indexes (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 2.0, 3.3	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

To drop the indices, run the following SQL*Plus script until it completes successfully:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <FV username>/<FV password> @fvdrpidx.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <FV username>/<FV password> @fvdrpidx.sql
```

Database and System Administration Upgrade Steps

Perform the following System Administration steps and database upgrade steps to prepare for running AutoUpgrade.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Checklist	Performed by
2. Enable SYSADMIN user and password (required)	System Administrator
3. Disable AOL Audit Trail (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Identify potential ORACLE schema conflicts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

If you originally installed Oracle Applications with Release 9.3 or earlier, you must ensure that the IDs for existing ORACLE schemas will not conflict with ones necessary for new schemas created by AutoUpgrade. To identify potential conflicts, type the following from the new APPL_TOP:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <AOL username>/<AOL password> @adpuver.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adpuver.sql
```

Any ORACLE ID values listed by the script that are not associated with an APPS schema are potential conflicts, and may result in problems during the upgrade.

Attention: If you determine there is a potential conflict, contact Oracle Support.

Step 2: Enable SYSADMIN user and password (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

AutoUpgrade must access the Oracle Application Object Library ORACLE username using the application user SYSADMIN. Ensure that this application user exists and is enabled. SYSADMIN must also have access to the System Administrator responsibility. Be sure the name of this responsibility remains System Administrator and that it connects to the APPS schema for its data group. Password must be set to SYSADMIN.

To verify this information, go to Security > User > Define and query for user name SYSADMIN. Perform the verification from your old APPL_TOP.

Step 3: Disable AOL Audit Trail (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes
Requires concurrent manager: Yes	

If you are using the AOL Audit Trail feature, you must disable it before running AutoUpgrade. From the System Administrator responsibility under your old APPL_TOP, navigate to Security > Audit Trail > Groups. In the Audit Groups window, set the Group State field to Disable - Prepare for Archive for each audit group defined. Run the Audit Trail Update Tables report from the Submit Requests window (Requests > Run).

If you plan to re-enable auditing after the upgrade, archive and purge the shadow tables now. Data changes made after implementing this step are not audited.

Additional Information: Disabling AuditTrail and Archiving Audit Data, *Oracle Applications System Administration Reference Manual, Release 10* or *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Release 11*

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Shut down applications listeners and concurrent managers (required)	Database Administrator
2. Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (required)	Database Administrator
3. Set up Net8 (required) - database server	Database Administrator
4. Run preparatory scripts - database server (required)	Database Administrator
5. Gather database statistics for CBO (required)	Database Administrator
6. Gather database information (recommended)	Database Administrator
7. Check SQL*Plus options (required)	Database Administrator
8. Verify rollback segment sizing (required)	Database Administrator
9. Turn off automatic archive logging (recommended)	Database Administrator
10. Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Checklist	Performed by
11. Run preparatory scripts – admin server (required)	Database Administrator
12. Back up your Oracle Applications (recommended)	Database Administrator
13. Complete upgrade steps for NLS databases (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Shut down applications listeners and concurrent managers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

You need to shut down forms listeners, web listeners, and the concurrent managers before you begin the upgrade. Do this from your old APPL_TOP.

Ensure all concurrent process are complete:

Before you shut down the concurrent managers, check to see that all processes are complete. Navigate to Concurrent > Requests. In the Find Requests window, select All my requests. Click Find. Cancel pending requests as necessary.

Additional Information: Chapter 3, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Shut down applications listeners and concurrent managers:

As System Administrator, choose Administer Concurrent Managers. Navigate to the Control field and select Deactivate.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Installation Update*

Step 2: Migrate or upgrade to Oracle8i Enterprise Edition (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Migration	Users must log off: Yes

If you migrated or upgraded your database to Release 8.1.7 in Category 1, you do not have to perform the upgrade or migration again. Simply follow the additional instructions under the appropriate heading in this step.

If you have not yet migrated or upgraded, you must do so now. Follow the instructions under the appropriate heading.

Additional Information: *Oracle8i Server Migration; Oracle8i Utilities; Maintaining Oracle Applications*

If you migrated or upgraded to Release 8.1.7 in Category 1:

1. Switch your database to the Oracle8i ORACLE_HOME that Rapid Install created in Category 2 by performing the following steps:
 - move the init.ora parameter file from the initial 8.1.7 home dbs directory to the new 8.1.7 home dbs directory.
 - relocate database files, if necessary.
 - recreate control files, if you relocated the database files.
 - start the database

Note: Rapid Install has already created the ORACLE_HOME with the appropriate RDBMS patches for this release.

2. Set the following init.ora parameters:

```
optimizer_mode = choose
_sqllexec_progression_cost = 0
db_name = <new database name>
control_files = <location of your control files>
```

Set the hash_area_size = 30000000. Set the parallel_max_servers = 4 times the number of CPUs on the database server node. The maximum allowable value is 60.

The remaining parameters are the same as the ones you set in Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 1, Step 5. Once you have successfully run AutoUpgrade, you can reset the hash_area_size and parallel_max_servers to the default values.

3. Make sure you set up your tablespaces as described in the Category 2 Database Upgrade Tasks, Step 2.

If you are migrating or upgrading your database to Release 8.1.7 now:

1. Perform the migration or upgrade using the Oracle8i ORACLE_HOME created by Rapid Install. Bring up your database in that ORACLE_HOME, then follow

the instructions in *Oracle8i Migration Release 3 (8.1.7)* to migrate the database. There are no additional components to upgrade in a Release 10.7 or Release 11.0.

2. Set init.ora parameters.

See Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 1, Step 2 for the list of init.ora values. Note that because Release 11*i* is run in the cost-based optimizer (CBO) mode, the optimizer_mode parameter must be set to *choose*.

```
optimizer_mode = choose
_sqlxexec_progression_cost = 0
```

Set the hash_area_size = 30MB and the parallel_max_servers = MIN (60 or 4 times the number of CPUs).

Once you have successfully run AutoUpgrade, you can reset the hash_area_size and parallel_max_servers to the default values. Don't forget to restart your database so that the parameters take effect.

Attention: The init.ora parameters you set in Category 1 allowed your system to continue to run in rule-based mode. However, after the upgrade, your system *must* run in CBO mode. For that reason, your optimizer_mode parameter must now be set to *choose*.

- 3. Identify or create PL/SQL log and out directories. See Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 1, Step 4.
- 4. Set up tablespaces (conditionally required). See Chapter 2, Step 2.

Step 3: Set up Net8 (required) - database server

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Net8 Administrators' Guide Users must log off: Yes	

Follow the instructions in the referenced documents to set up Net8.

Additional Information: Configuring Non-Oracle Database Services: Configuring Net8 for External Procedures, *Oracle Net8 Administrators' Guide*; *Oracle8i Enterprise Edition Release Notes*,

Step 4: Run preparatory scripts - database server (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

We provide scripts that create objects on the database server that the RDBMS and other technology stack components require. Scripts whose names begin with the letters "ad" are located in APPL_TOP/admin. You must copy these scripts from the APPL_TOP/admin directory to the database server's ORACLE_HOME and then reset the environment prior to running these scripts.

Each script creates one or more spool files and places them in the directory you ran the scripts from. Make sure you have permission to write to that directory. Then, check the spool file for errors after you run each script. The following scripts are provided. Run them in the ORACLE_HOME on the database server.

Script (UNIX)	Script (NT)	Description
addb817.sql	addb817_nt.sql	RDBMS SYS schema setup script. Also installs objects for JAVA and Oracle Spatial.
adsy817.sql	adsy817_nt.sql	RDBMS SYSTEM schema setup script.
addbctx.sql	addbctx_nt.sql	Oracle <i>interMedia</i> setup script.
initjvm.sql	initjvm.sql	Objects for JAVA and Oracle Spatial.

Because we provide new versions of the RDBMS scripts for each new release, we refer to them as addbxxx.sql and adsyxxx.sql in the following instructions. Replace the xxx with the version number; for example, the script is named addb817.sql for Oracle version 8.1.7.

Note: Unlike the previous 8.1.6 version of this script, the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) is not installed by addbxxx.sql. Instead, you must run initjvm.sql, as shown in the following steps, to ensure that JVM is installed properly.

1. Create a \$ORACLE_HOME/apps/admin on your database server.
2. Copy addbxxx.sql, adsyxxx.sql, and addbctx.sql (or addbxxx_nt.sql, adsyxxx_nt.sql, and addbctx_nt.sql for Windows NT) from your \$APPLTOP/admin directory to \$ORACLE_HOME/apps/admin.

3. Set your environment to point to the ORACLE_HOME on your database server.

Note: You must access the database server directly using Server Manager. Do not attempt to run any of these scripts using SQL*NET.

4. Run addbxxx and adsyxxx from Server Manager.

For UNIX users:

```
$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @addbxxx.sql

$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password>
SVRMGR> @adsyxxx.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\apps\admin> svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @addbxxx_nt.sql

C:\apps\admin> svrmgrl
$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password>
SVRMGR> @adsyxxx_nt.sql
```

Note: The addbxxx.sql script may take a long time to run.

5. Run initjvm.sql from Server Manager.

For UNIX users:

```
cd /$ORACLE_HOME/javavm/install
$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @initjvm.sql
```

For NT users:

```
cd %ORACLE_HOME%\javavm\install
$ svrmgrl
```

```
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @initjvm.sql
```

6. Run addbctx from SQL*Plus. UNIX users should connect as SYSTEM, and NT users should connect as INTERNAL.

For UNIX users:

```
sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @addbctx.sql <Remove ConText> \
<Default Tablespace> <Temporary Tablespace> <Intermedia Shared Library>
```

For NT users:

```
sqlplus <INTERNAL username>/<INTERNAL password> @addbctx_nt.sql \
<Remove ConText> <Default Tablespace> <Temporary Tablespace> \
<Intermedia Shared Library>
```

The arguments are as follows:

Argument	Description
Remove ConText	If you are upgrading from an earlier release and had an existing installation of Oracle ConText, you must remove it by setting this parameter to TRUE. Otherwise, set it to FALSE.
Default Tablespace	Default tablespace for the Oracle <i>interMedia</i> schema (CTXSYS is recommended). If the CTXSYS tablespace does not exist, you need create it. The size required is 10 MB.
Temporary Tablespace	Temporary tablespace for the Oracle <i>interMedia</i> schema (TEMP is recommended).
<i>interMedia</i> Shared Library	Full path name of the Oracle <i>interMedia</i> shared library, which is \$ORACLE_HOME/ctx/lib/libctx8.so on UNIX, and %ORACLE_HOME%\bin\oractxx8.dll on Windows NT.

Note: If you run this script inside SQL*Plus instead of from the SQL*Plus command line, you must enter the full path name for the *interMedia* Shared Library parameter. SQL*Plus does not evaluate the ORACLE_HOME variable when used with a parameter.

Additional Information: *Oracle8i interMedia, Spatial, Time Series, and Visual Information Retrieval Options: Oracle8i Server Migration*

Step 5: Gather database statistics for CBO (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Concepts	Users must log off: Yes

See Database Upgrade Steps, Chapter 1, Step 5 for information about gathering CBO database statistics.

Step 6: Gather database information (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Administrator's Guide	Users must log off: Yes

The adupinfo.sql script generates a file called adupinfo.lst, which contains information pertinent to steps you will perform later in the upgrade. To run adupinfo.lst, from your new APPL_TOP, type:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/preupg
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\preupg
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adupinfo.sql
```

Additional Information: Other AD Utilities, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 7: Check SQL*Plus options (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: No

As part of the Oracle8i requirements, you should have set the SQL*Plus PAUSE option OFF and the NEWPAGE option to a value other than 0 (zero). Verify these values in the adupinfo output before you run AutoUpgrade.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Installation Update*

Step 8: Verify rollback segment sizing (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Database Administrator**Reference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide**Users must log off: **Yes**

Verify that your rollback segments are large enough to handle the upgrade data volume. They should be configured to avoid an ORA-01555 "Snapshot too old" error. The rollback segment sizing information can be found in the adupinfo.lst output. Typically, you should have 1 segment per worker with an extent size of 1 MB and a minimum size of 60 MB.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Installation Update*

Step 9: Turn off automatic archive logging (recommended)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Database Administrator /
System Administrator**Reference manual: **Oracle8i Administrator's Guide**Users must log off: **Yes**

If Oracle8i is set up to automatically archive redo log files, turn off archiving by running adstoplg.sql. This reduces the amount of disk space and shortens the time required by the upgrade. If you need to recover to an earlier point, you can restore the database backup and rerun AutoUpgrade. This is faster than recovering data through archived log files.

1. Copy adstoplg.sql to the admin subdirectory you created in Step 4.
2. Set your environment to point to the ORACLE_HOME on your database server.
3. Go to the admin subdirectory and run the script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @adstoplg.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\apps\admin> svrmgrl
SVRMGR> connect / as sysdba
SVRMGR> @adstoplg.sql
```

Step 10: Disable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Concepts	Users must log off: Yes

Disable custom triggers or constraints on Oracle Applications tables. You will re-enable these triggers in Category 4, Step 13. If you have custom indexes on Applications tables, determine whether they will affect performance during the upgrade, and drop them if necessary. If you aren't sure, it is best to drop the indexes and add them after the upgrade if the new release has not created a similar index.

Step 11: Run preparatory scripts – admin server (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

Make sure you are in the APPL_TOP/admin directory before running this script.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin
$ sqlplus <SYSTEM username>/<SYSTEM password> @adsysapp.sql <SYSTEM password>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @adsysapp.sql <SYSTEM password>
```

The script creates a spool file and places it in the directory you ran the script from. Make sure you have permission to write to that directory. Check the spool file for errors after you run each script. Note that the database may contain some invalid packages. This is acceptable. They will be validated when AutoUpgrade runs.

Step 12: Back up your Oracle Applications (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide	Users must log off: Yes

Make a cold backup of the Oracle Applications database. If you encounter problems during the upgrade process, you can use this backup to restore your installation to its state just before beginning the upgrade.

Warning: Shut down the database with the **NORMAL** option. You may not be able to restore the database from the backup if you use the **IMMEDIATE** or **ABORT** option.

Step 13: Complete upgrade steps for NLS databases (conditionally required)	
Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Yes

If American English is the only active language in your installation, you can omit this step.

If you are upgrading an NLS database, you must apply patch 1457345 (in pre-install mode) to prepare your database for the upgrade. This patch is available in the patch download area on *OracleMetaLink*. Refer to the readme file for instructions.

Run AutoUpgrade

You have now completed all the tasks necessary to prepare your Oracle Applications products for an upgrade to Release 11*i*. The next step is to run the AutoUpgrade utility (*adaimgr*) to begin the upgrade. For complete instructions on running this utility, see *Maintaining Oracle Applications*.

Starting and Stopping AutoUpgrade

You can start AutoUpgrade from any directory by typing *adaimgr*. AutoUpgrade displays an introduction screen and asks questions about your upgrade.

Note: We recommend using a window-based terminal so you can open multiple windows to monitor and control more than one process while your upgrade is running.

You can exit from the menus and screens by entering *abort* at any AutoUpgrade prompt. After you exit, you can restart AutoUpgrade from where your last session ended or from the beginning.

WARNING: AutoUpgrade begins to upgrade products in the database immediately after the introduction portion of the process. Do not attempt to stop it without first contacting Oracle Support Services.

Attention: If an error occurs while upgrading the database, you can correct it without stopping AutoUpgrade.

Restarting AutoUpgrade

If you logged out of the applmgr account after you stopped AutoUpgrade, be sure that your environment is set up properly before you restart AutoUpgrade. Do this by logging back in to applmgr and resetting your environment.

Restart AutoUpgrade by re-issuing the adaimgr command. At the prompt for the name of the log file, specify the file from the previous session or supply a new filename. When you reuse a log file, AutoUpgrade adds the message "Start of AutoUpgrade Session" to the end of the log file and appends messages from the new session as it generates them.

AutoUpgrade then asks if you want to continue with your previous session or start a new one.

Continue Session

Continuing the previous session is the default. When you choose to continue, AutoUpgrade determines where your last session stopped and restarts at that point. It retains all configuration information you entered during your last session.

Attention: If the machine failed while AutoUpgrade was running the upgrade, the restart files may have been corrupted. Contact Oracle Support if you encounter discrepancies when restarting.

Start New Session

AutoUpgrade asks you to confirm a choice not to complete the previous session. It then restarts from the beginning. This resets the configuration screens, so you will have to reenter any previous configuration information that you want to retain.

WARNING: Do not restart AutoUpgrade from the beginning if it stopped *after* you began to upgrade products in the database. If this happens, determine the cause, correct the problem, and restart the previous session. You can also restore the last saved database and file system and start the process from the beginning.

Category 4 — Before Using Oracle Applications

This chapter describes the Category 4 steps — they affect the entire Oracle Applications system. *All users must be logged off the system and should not attempt to use any Oracle Applications product until these steps are complete.*

Note: When you perform upgrade finishing steps for multiple databases that share the same admin file system, you can run each from \$APPL_TOP/admin/out so the output does not overwrite others. NT users run the steps from %APPL_TOP%\admin\out.

- Database Upgrade Tasks 4-2
- Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks 4-10
- System Administration Tasks 4-12
- Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks 4-21
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks 4-23
- Oracle Financials Common Country Features Tasks 4-24
- Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks 4-25
- Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks 4-27

Database Upgrade Steps

Perform the steps for the Database Upgrade before you perform steps for Applications Technology products or any other product-specific steps.

Database Upgrade Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Update database to current Applications release level (required)	Database Administrator
2. Install online help (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Install NLS translated software (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
4. Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
5. Configure Applications client software (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
6. Reset ORACLE schema passwords (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
7. Gather database statistics for CBO (required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
8. Reapply customizations to environment and files (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
9. Set rollback segments for normal use (required)	Database Administrator
10. Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (required)	Database Administrator
11. Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
12. Integrate custom objects and schemas (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
13. Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
14. Back up Oracle Applications (recommended)	Database Administrator / System Administrator

Step 1: Update database to current Applications release level (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Requires concurrent manager: No

To bring your database to the full Oracle Applications Release 11i maintenance level, apply a database driver patch. From the administration server, run the database driver that applies to your current release level: d107_to_1154.drv or d110_to_1154.drv, for upgrades from Release 10.7 or Release 11.0, respectively (there is no

copy driver or generation driver). Both drivers are located in \$AU_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %AU_TOP%\patch\115\driver (NT). Running the driver patch may take 11– 17 hours, depending on your configuration.

Warning: Do not attempt to run your Oracle Applications without applying the database driver patch. It must be applied immediately after the completion of AutoUpgrade.

Additional Information: AutoPatch, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 2: Install online help (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Requires concurrent manager: No

Instructions for installing online help are located in the Finishing your Upgrade chapter of this book. However, you may want to install online help now so that you can reference it for the remaining upgrade steps. For instructions, see Step 2, in Chapter 7. Before you make the decision about when to install help, you should note that it may take a considerable amount of time to complete this process.

Step 3: Install NLS translated software (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0 with a Non-American English base language	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Requires concurrent manager: No

If American English is the only active language in your installation, omit this step.

You must finish installing your base language prior to logging on to Oracle Applications. AutoUpgrade installs *only* American English. If your base language is *not* American English, you must complete the steps for installing translated software now. The steps are described in Finishing Your Installation in *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Step 4: Run Rapid Install to configure and start server processes (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
Reference manual: Installing Oracle Applications	Requires concurrent manager: No

Go to Chapter 4 in *Installing Oracle Applications*, and follow the instructions to run Rapid Install to continue with the database upgrade. This time, you run Rapid Install to configure and start your server processes. Start Rapid Install, and choose to the configure the existing Applications instance option on the initial screen.

Follow the steps to identify the configuration file you created when you ran Rapid Install in Category 2. Rapid Install creates server process control scripts and starts all the server processes for you. For more information about the scripts, refer to the Review Server Process Control Scripts section in Chapter 7 of this book.

When instructed to do so, return to this book and continue with the steps in this chapter.

Note: You must have your database and Net8 listener started and running before you perform this step.

Step 5: Configure Applications client software (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
--	--

Reference manual: No	Requires concurrent manager: No
-----------------------------	--

Before you log on to your Oracle Applications for the first time, you need to configure your client software to use the Oracle Java Virtual Machine (JVM) on a web client. In order to do this you need to create a digital signature and repackage JInitiator, then complete the setup so that the client software will be downloaded and installed the first time your users access Oracle Applications.

Refer to the Finishing Your Installation chapter in *Installing Oracle Applications* for complete information about configuring your client software.

Step 6: Reset ORACLE schema passwords (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
--	--

Reference manual: No	Requires concurrent manager: No
-----------------------------	--

During the upgrade, Rapid Install preserves the passwords that you set previously for your existing products. However, as it creates the new schema for each *new* product installed, it sets up a default password derived from the product short

name. To maintain product security, reset these default passwords now. Change the passwords on the Oracle Users form using the System Administrator responsibility.

Additional Information: *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 7: Gather database statistics for CBO (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No** Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**

Once you have applied the patch, run the Gather Schema Statistics concurrent program (System Administration > Submit Request) to gather database statistics. If the schema name is ALL, then all Apps-specific schema (having an entry in the FND_PRODUCT_INSTALLATIONS table) statistics are gathered. In addition to gathering index and table-level statistics, the procedure also gathers column-level histogram statistics for all the columns listed in the FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS table. *This program is potentially long-running.*

Because it is important to have an up-to-date set, you should gather database statistics periodically to make sure your database queries are optimized.

Additional Information: Cost-based Optimization in Oracle Applications, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*; Cost-based Optimization, *Oracle Applications Concepts*; The Optimizer, *Oracle8i Concepts*

Step 8: Reapply customizations to environment and files (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual need: **No**

If your site has customizations (for forms, reports, programs, or libraries), reapply the changes if they apply to the new release. If you customized Applications environment files (APPLSYS.env, fndenv, or devenv), re-integrate them into the adovars.env file \$APPL_TOP/admin (UNIX) or \$APPL_TOP%\admin (NT).

Step 9: Set rollback segments for normal use (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle8i Java Stored Procedures Developer's Guide**

Set your rollback segments for normal operation. Typically, this is 1 for each 25 users, plus 1 for each concurrent manager. The extent size should be 1 MB and the minimum size 60 MB.

Step 10: Install XML Parser for PL/SQL (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle8i Java Stored Procedures Developer's Guide**

You need to install two stand-alone utilities in your database: XML Parser for PL/SQL (plxmlparser_v1_0_2.zip) and XML SQL Utility (XSU12_ver1_2_1.zip). Complete this step from the ORACLE_HOME on the database server.

1. Create an admin subdirectory under the appsutil directory in the ORACLE_HOME on your database server (this directory may already exist).
2. Copy plxmlparser_v1_0_2.zip and XSU12_ver1_2_1.zip from the utils directory in the Common area to the appsutil/admin directory, and unzip them. The plxmlparser_v1_0_2.zip file creates several subdirectories in the current location. The XSU12_ver1_2_1.zip file creates a single subdirectory (OracleXSU12), and places everything under that directory.
3. Set your environment to point to the ORACLE_HOME on your database server. Do *not* use Net8 to connect to the database. To verify that you have not connected using Net8, make sure the TWO_TASK variable is *not* set, and that the ORACLE_SID variable points to your Applications database.
4. Follow the installation instructions in the readme file for each product (lib/README for the XML Parser for PL/SQL, and OracleXSU12/doc/relnotes.html for the XML SQL Utility). Install all packages in the APPS schema (or all APPS schemas, if you have more than one).
5. Take note of the following clarifications to the installation instructions in the readme files.

XML Parser for PL/SQL (UNIX users)

To run load java, use the following format:

```
$loadjava -user <APPS username>/<APPS password> -r -v <filename>.jar
```

To run SQL*Plus, use the following format:

```
$sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<filename>.sql
```

XML Parser for PL/SQL (Windows users)

To run load java, use the following format:

```
C:\>loadjava -user <APPS username>/<APPS password> -r -v <filename>.jar
```

To run SQL*Plus, use the following format:

```
C:\>sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<filename>.sql
```

XML SQL Utility

The default user and password in the oraclexmlsqlload.xxx script must be changed to <APPS username>/<APPS password> before you run the utility.

Note: Be sure the Unzip program is in your PATH. We have provided a copy for most operating systems in your COMMON_TOP under /utils/unzip.

6. Update XML Parser for Java version to ensure consistency between the middle tier and the database. If the database tier and the application tier are on the same server, change to the location of your JAVA_TOP and run the loadjava command. If the database tier is not on the same server as the application tier, copy xmlparserv2.zip from \$JAVA_TOP on any Applications server to a temporary location on the database server. Run loadjava to load it into the APPS schema using the following syntax:

For UNIX users:

```
$loadjava -user <APPS username>/<APPS password> -r -v xmlparserv2.zip
```

For Windows users:

```
C:\>loadjava -user <APPS username>/<APPS password> -r -v xmlparserv2.zip
```

Step 11: Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**
/ **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Maintaining Oracle Applications**

The <APPS schema name>.lst report checks for potential problems in your APPS schema(s). It is located in the \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out directory

(UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out (NT), where <dbname> is the name of the database you run the script against.

Note: MRC users are *required* to perform this step and correct all problems. See Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks in this chapter.

To validate APPS schema(s):

From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration, select the Validate APPS Schema(s) option. Check the report output and correct all problems. Rerun this step until there are no more problems listed.

To compile APPS schema(s):

From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in AD Administration, select the Compile APPS Schema(s) option to compile all the invalid objects in your APPS schema.

Additional Information: AD Administration, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Step 12: Integrate custom objects and schemas (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / System Administrator
--	--

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

If you are upgrading from a previous release and have custom objects or custom schemas that need to be tightly integrated with Oracle Applications, follow the steps in *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide* to re-integrate these customizations with the APPS schema.

Release 11i uses Invoker Rights for most PL/SQL packages. Executing these packages from custom schemas may require additional grants from and synonyms to APPS schema objects. We recommend you explicitly declare Invoker Rights or Definer Rights for custom PL/SQL packages. See *Oracle8i PL/SQL User's Guide and Reference* for more information.

If you have custom database objects, you should follow the naming standards for your custom object names so they will not conflict with Oracle Applications.

Warning: When naming database objects, use **XX** as a part of the short name. For example, you might define your custom application to use the short name **XXGL**, and database objects to begin with an **XXGL_** prefix.

Additional Information: Naming Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 13: Re-enable custom triggers, constraints, and indexes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle8i Administrator's Guide**

During the upgrade, your custom triggers or constraints would have processed may have been modified. If you disabled these triggers and constraints in Category 3, Step 10, you need to identify any data updates that must be made before you re-enable the triggers.

If you dropped any custom indexes Category 3, Step 10, review the new data model to determine if the index is still necessary before you redefine it.

Step 14: Back up Oracle Applications (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle8i Backup and Recovery Guide, Oracle Applications Concepts**

Your system administrator should back up the Oracle Applications product files. On a server or stand-alone machine, your database administrator should also back up the Oracle Applications database.

Upgrading Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

The following steps are generic for MRC and so must be performed to implement this feature across the products that use it. The steps assume an upgrade from

Oracle Applications Release 11.0. If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 and want to activate MRC in Release 11*i*, follow the steps in *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* to install MRC after you complete your upgrade to Release 11*i*.

Note: The Vision Demo database has MRC enabled, but the production and test databases do not. See *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* for more information.

Multiple Reporting Currencies Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (required)	Database Administrator
2. Maintain MRC schema(s) (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Verify your MRC installation (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Validate and compile APPS schema(s) (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Maintaining Oracle Applications	

If you have not already performed this step as a part of your database upgrade, you must do so now. For instructions, see Database Upgrade Tasks Step 11 in this chapter.

Important: *This is the most important step in the MRC upgrade process.* You must correct all problems in the report and log files in both parts of this step before continuing. Failure to correct all problems will result in an incomplete or unusable MRC installation.

Step 2: Maintain MRC schema(s) (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Maintaining Oracle Applications	

1. From the Maintain Applications Database Objects menu in adadmin, select the Maintain Multiple Reporting Currencies Schema(s) option. Choosing this

option ensures that your MRC schema is consistent with the changes to your APPS schema and compiles the objects in the APPS_MRC schema.

2. Run these optional steps:

Update MRC schema itself (MRC schema objects are always updated) [No]? Yes
 Compile invalid objects after updating MRC schema objects [No]? Yes
 Recreate MRC triggers in the APPS schema(s) [No]? Yes

This option produces a report called adadmin.log in the \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/log directory, where <dbname> is the name of the database against which adadmin is running. NT users will find this report in %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\log. Check the report output and correct all problems listed. Rerun this report until there are no more problems listed. You should also check errch01K.lst for issues. It is located in the same directory as adadmin.log.

3. Re-run the Maintain Multiple Reporting Currencies Schema(s) option when you make changes in the future. For example, if a patch changes schema objects, you must run this option after you apply the patch to ensure that your MRC schema is consistent with changes to your APPS schema.

Step 3: Verify your MRC installation (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Maintaining Oracle Applications**

To verify the success of your MRC installation, run advrfmrc.sql. This script tells you how to correct errors in your MRC schema. It:

- Verifies that for every package in APPS schema(s), there is an equivalent package or synonym in APPS_MRC schema(s).
- Verifies that there are no functions or packages missing in the APPS_MRC schema(s).
- Verifies that there are no database triggers in APPS_MRC schema(s), and all required MRC triggers are present in the APPS schema.
- Verifies that the MRC data group(s) is defined.
- Tells you how to correct errors in your APPS_MRC schema(s).

To run advrfmrc.sql for each APPS schema, APPS_MRC schema combination, type:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$AD_TOP/admin/sql/advrfrmrc.sql  
<First APPS schema name> <APPS schema name> <APPS_MRC schema name>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%AD_TOP%\admin\sql\advrfrmrc.sql  
<First APPS schema name> <APPS schema name> <APPS_MRC schema name>
```

Note: The <First APPS schema name> and <APPS schema name> values are the same when you are verifying the first APPS schema.

Applications Technology Products

Perform the upgrade steps for System Administration and Application Object Library before you perform product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Fix flexfields cross-validation rules (required)	Technical Specialist
2. Set profile options (required)	System Administrator
3. Clone Date and DateTime value sets (required)	Technical Specialist
4. Upgrade flexfield date and number data (required)	Technical Specialist
5. Set up electronic mail for use by concurrent managers (required)	System Administrator
6. Reconnect spawned concurrent programs (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
7. Update/verify custom responsibilities (conditionally required)	System Administrator
8. Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
9. Migrate your CUSTOM library (recommended)	System Administrator
10. Copy existing custom start scripts (conditionally required)	System Administrator
11. Restrict access to concurrent processing servers (required)	System Administrator
12. Load attachment files into database (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Fix flexfields cross-validation rules (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: No

In prior releases, cross-validation rules without lines were ignored. Now, they are considered violated because they include no range of combinations. Run `affixcvr.sql` to identify flexfield cross-validation rules that have no lines:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @affixcvr.sql
```

To disable or delete key flexfield cross-validation rules without lines, as the System Administrator, navigate to Applications > Flexfield > Key > Cross Validation. Run `affixcvr.sql` again to ensure the consistency of cross-validation rule data.

Step 2: Set profile options (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Product-specific implementation manuals, Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**

For instructions about setting profile options and a list of the ones you need to set, refer to your product-specific implementation documentation and *OracleMetaLink*.

Additional Information: Profile Options in Oracle Application Object Library, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 3: Clone Date and DateTime value sets (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: No

Convert flexfield segments or report parameters that use value sets of format type Date or DateTime to use value sets of format type Standard Date and Standard DateTime. You can use an interactive script (`afffupg1.sql`) or the Flexfield and Report Parameter setup forms.

To use the script:

By running afffupg1.sql, you can clone Date value sets of size 9 or 11 characters to Standard Date value sets of size 11. DateTime value sets of any size are cloned as Standard DateTime value sets of length 20. You can use this script to upgrade flexfield segments that use the old Date/DateTime value sets to use the new Standard Date/DateTime value sets. Attributes of the value set, such as independent and dependent values or hierarchy information, are not copied to the new value set. To run afffupg1.sql, type:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffupg1.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FND_TOP%\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @afffupg1.sql
```

To use the interactive menu:

From the menu, choose to list report parameters or flexfields (descriptive or key) that use Date or DateTime value sets (options 1 - 3). Then, choose option 4 if you want to clone the existing value sets. Finally, choose to upgrade the report parameters or flexfields (options 5 - 7). Do not use option 8 for this step.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Step 4: Upgrade flexfield date and number data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	

To support multiple formats, all date and number data is stored in a canonical form. You must upgrade the transaction data in your date and number value sets to reflect this canonical form.

Use the FNDDFFUPG concurrent program to upgrade the transaction data stored in flexfield segments using Standard Date/DateTime value sets to use canonical date format (RRRR/MM/DD HH24:MI:SS). Upgrade all transaction number data validated by Number/Char-Number Only value sets to canonical format "." (dot) as the decimal separator; no group separators. Your numbers and dates will appear in the appropriate display format at runtime.

Note that FNDDFFUPG does not stop if it encounters an error, so it is important to read the log file and search for the occurrences of the word *ERROR*.

To run this program from the command line, type:

```
FNDDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y <MODE> [MODEPARAMETERS]
<MODE> : Upgrade Utility Mode
```

The mode setting allows you to either upgrade single standard date or number value sets, or to upgrade all standard date or number value sets. Valid modes are: DATEONE, DATEALL, NUMBERONE, NUMBERALL. For more information about modes and mode specific parameters, type

```
FNDDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y <MODE>
```

To upgrade all number data for a given range of value sets:

Use the following syntax.

```
FNDDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y NUMBERALL <First Value set> <Last value set>
[<SESSION_MODE> [<NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS>]]
```

In the following example, the first line upgrades all number value sets that start with letter "A" or "a," and the second upgrades all number value sets (potentially long-running). In both examples, the numeric characters ".", " are specified. Always specify the numeric characters your site uses for the radix character and the thousands separator in the NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS parameter.

```
FNDDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y NUMBERALL 'A' 'B' '.,'
FNDDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y NUMBERALL ' ' ' ' 'customer_data'
'.,'
```

To upgrade all standard date data for a given range of value sets:

The syntax is as follows.

```
FNDDFFUPG <Username/Password> 0 Y DATEALL <First Value set> <Last value set>\
[<SESSION_MODE>]
```

In the following example, the first line upgrades all standard date or date-time value sets that start with the letter A or "a," and the second upgrades all standard date or standard date-time value sets (which might take a long time):

```
FNDDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL 'A' 'B'
FNDDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL ' ' ' '
```

To divide the value set upgrade into several sections:

Because upgrading your value sets may take a long time, we recommend dividing the upgrade into several sections. For example:

```
FNDDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL ' ' 'E'
FNDDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL 'E' 'N'
```

FNDFFUPG <APPS username>/<APPS password>@<db name> 0 Y DATEALL 'N' ''

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Step 5: Set up electronic mail for use by concurrent managers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Custom Concurrent Processing

The concurrent managers send mail to the applmgr user if the Internal concurrent manager stops running. You need to make sure electronic mail for the applmgr user has been set up. The log file for the Internal concurrent manager shows an error if mail is not set up correctly.

Step 6: Reconnect spawned concurrent programs (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Object Application Library Technical Reference Manual	Do before anyone uses: Custom Concurrent Processing

If you have developed shell script concurrent programs (that use the Host execution method), you must reconnect the programs to the concurrent manager interface. Copy the concurrent programs from the old PROD_TOP to the new one. Change your working directory to the directory that contains your concurrent program executable. Then reconnect your concurrent program as follows:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $<PROD>_TOP/bin
$ ln -s $FND_TOP/bin/fndcpesr <program>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %<PROD>_TOP%\bin
C:\> copy %FND_TOP%\bin\fndcpesr.exe <program>.exe
```

Parameter descriptions are as follows:

- <PROD> Your custom application product short name.
- <program> The name you used to define your concurrent program executable in Oracle Applications without any filename extension.

Additional Information: Implementing Concurrent Processing and Concurrent Processing and Product Customizations Standards, *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual*

Step 7: Update/verify custom responsibilities (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7SC, 10.7NCA	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual or user's guide needed: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Custom Responsibilities

If you created a custom responsibility, you must verify that it uses the correct menu after the upgrade. From the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to Security > Responsibilities. Query every custom responsibility. Update as necessary.

Step 8: Copy and re-customize previously modified scripts or reports (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Custom Concurrent Processing

If you have customized any shell scripts or reports that are part of Oracle Applications, copy them to your custom application directories and re-customize the copy as necessary.

Additional Information: Product Customization Standards, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 9: Migrate your CUSTOM library (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide	

Before you copy the custom code in your CUSTOM library to the new directory structure, refer to the backup you created in Category 1, Step 4 and verify that the customizations are still valid for the new version of Oracle Applications.

If they are, place a copy of the new CUSTOM library (CUSTOM.pll) in a safe place. It is located under your new APPL_TOP in \$AU_TOP/resource (UNIX), or %AU_TOP%\resource (NT). Then, make a copy of your old Oracle Forms 4.5-based CUSTOM library and place it in the new directory. Upgrade to Oracle Forms

Developer 6i by regenerating the library. Or, you can cut and paste your existing custom code into the new library, and then regenerate it.

Additional Information: Using the CUSTOM Library, *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Step 10: Copy existing custom start scripts (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administration Guide	

If you have customized the concurrent manager startup script (startmgr), copy the script from your old environment to your new environment. Then, verify that your customizations are still valid for the new environment.

Note: The default location in UNIX for the startmgr script is \$FND_TOP/bin. For more information, see *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 11: Restrict access to concurrent processing servers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	

Log and output files are viewed on the desktop client through Report Review Agent and the Web Report Review tool. So, it is not necessary for users to have direct access to the concurrent processing servers to view these files.

To ensure security of Oracle Applications log and output files, you should limit user access to the concurrent processing servers. If users must have direct access to the concurrent processing servers for other reasons, follow the steps in this section to restrict access to the Applications log and output directories.

Create a UNIX Edition group for directory users The system administrator should create a UNIX Edition group consisting of applmgr and the users who need access to the directory. For example, they might create the group *glusers* for all users of Oracle General Ledger. Groups are defined in the group file of the *etc* directory.

Change directory file protection From the applmgr account, change the file protection of a directory so that it has no global privileges:

```
$ chmod 770 <directory>
```

In the following example, the *r* and *x* shown in the system response indicate that there are global read and execute privileges for the directory:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwxr-x  2 applmgr  misappl  29423  Jan 12 10:27 out/
      ^  ^
```

After the directory privilege is changed, the system response lists three dashes for global privileges, indicating that all global privileges have been revoked:

```
$ chmod 770 out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx---  2 applmgr  misappl  29423  Jan 12 10:27 out/
      ^  ^
```

Change directory group Change a directory's group to the new UNIX Edition group:

```
$ chgrp <group> <directory>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ chgrp glusers out
$ ls -ldg out
drwxrwx---  2 applmgr  glusers  29423  Jan 12 10:27 out/
```

The system response indicates that the group has been changed from *misappl* to *glusers*.

Alter file privilege for concurrent manager files (optional) The operating system user who starts the concurrent managers (applmgr) owns all log and output files created by the managers. Oracle Applications uses the UNIX command umask to remove write privilege to these files from all users except the owner. You can change the file privileges by changing the value of umask used by Oracle Applications.

The startmgr script uses the umask value set by the environment variable \$APPLMSK in fndenv. You can change this value simply by modifying \$APPLMSK. For higher security, however, override the value of \$APPLMSK in startmgr. If you are setting up parallel concurrent processing, do the same for dcpbatch.

To modify the umask value in startmgr or dcpbatch, change to \$FND_TOP/bin and display the script with the file editor of your choice. Find the following line:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"022"}
```

This line indicates that if \$APPLMSK is not set, the umask command uses the value 022. You can modify the alternate value by substituting a new one. For example:

```
umask ${APPLMSK-"026"}
```

You must use a 3-digit value as an argument to override \$APPLMSK. For example:

```
umask 022
```

Note: The UNIX man page for umask contains more information on the umask command and mask settings.

If you change umask values, remember that the owner of a file should always have read and write privilege for the file.

Restrict access to scripts (optional) To enhance security, give only the applmgr login write permission for startmgr and batchmgr. If you are using parallel concurrent processing, do the same for dcpstart and dcpbatch. Also change the restrictions on any custom scripts that call these files. The following commands prevent all users except applmgr from altering the scripts:

```
$ cd $FND_TOP/bin
$ chmod 700 startmgr batchmgr dcpstart dcpbatch
```

Step 12: Load attachment files into database (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7NCA, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

In Category 1, Step 2, you determined the location of the existing attachment files, if any. Now, you must load any existing attachment files into the database.

1. In the operating system on the application server, change to the directory you created in Category 1.
2. Type the following command (UNIX) all on one line with a space between FND_ATTACH and PLS_CALLBACK:

```
FNDGFU <DB Connect String> 0 Y UPLOAD PROGRAM_NAME=FND_ATTACH \
PLS_CALLBACK=FND_ATTACHMENT_UTIL_PKG.UPDATE_FILE_METADATA *
```

where <DB Connect String> is the username/password@Oracle SID of the APPS account, such as apps/apps@TEST, and * is a wildcard indicating that all

files in the directory should be uploaded to the attachments tables in the database.

3. Check the log file produced by FNDGFU (located in the same directory with the file name L<concurrent request ID>.log) and verify that there are no errors.
4. If the log file indicates any errors, correct the problem indicated in the file.

Oracle FlexBuilder/Account Generator Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow (required)	System Administrator
2. Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Update Account Generator process (conditionally required)	Application Specialist / System Administrator
4. Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type (conditionally required)	Application Specialist / System Administrator

Step 1: Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Workflow Guide**

Oracle Workflow is installed by AutoUpgrade for use by Oracle Applications products. But, you must perform some manual setup steps after the upgrade processing is complete. The steps are outlined in the *Oracle Workflow Guide*.

Step 2: Complete installation steps for Oracle Workflow Builder (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Workflow Client Installation Notes**

You must perform this step if you are customizing the default Account Generator process for your product. Oracle Workflow Builder (client-side) is installed on a PC using Oracle Installer. The *Client Installation Notes* are included on the *Oracle Workflow Client* CD.

Step 3: Update Account Generator process (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7** Performed by: **Application Specialist / System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Flexfields Guide**

If you made customizations to the default Account Generator process, but did not change its name, you do not need to perform this step.

If you have customized your Account Generator process for a particular Workflow Account Generator item type and assigned a new name to it, you need to upgrade the Account Generator. The following table shows the Account Generator item types and default processes that you can view and modify using Oracle Workflow. The <product name> Account Generator sections in individual product user’s guides contain details.

Product	Item Type	Default Process Name
Oracle Assets	FA Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Order Entry	Generate Cost of Goods Sold Account	Generate Default Account
Oracle Projects	Project Expense Report Account Generator	Default Account Generator for Expense Reports
	Project Supplier Invoice Account Generator	Generate Default Account
Oracle Purchasing	PO Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
	PO Requisition Account Generator	Generate Default Accounts
Oracle Receivables	AR Substitute Balancing Segment	Replace Balancing Segment

Additional Information: Account Generator in Oracle Assets, *Oracle Assets User’s Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Order Entry, *Oracle Order Entry/Shipping User’s Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Projects, *Oracle Projects User’s Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Purchasing, *Oracle Purchasing User’s Guide*; Account Generator in Oracle Receivables, *Oracle Receivables User’s Guide*

There are three ways to upgrade the Account Generator.

1. Do nothing. If the default meets your accounting requirements, you can use the Account Generator default processes provided by each product that previously used FlexBuilder.

2. Associate FlexBuilder process to use customized FlexBuilder rules. If you used FlexBuilder in Release 10.7, and want to continue using the customizations you made to FlexBuilder, you can migrate those business rules into the Account Generator.
3. Develop a new default Account Generator process. Create a new process or copy the existing default and change the name. Then use the renamed process as a base for your changes.

Additional Information: Customizing the Account Generator, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Step 4: Associate FlexBuilder rules for Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Flexfields Guide	

If your installation uses customized flexfields, use the Account Generator Processes window to associate the Generate Account Using FlexBuilder Rules process with the appropriate Accounting Flexfield structure and Workflow item type.

Additional Information: Choosing the Process for a Flexfield Structure, *Oracle Applications Flexfields Guide*

Country-specific Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 4 tasks to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Performed for this country...
1. Modify truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)	All

Step 1: Modify truncated lookup codes or renamed meanings in custom modules (recommended)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: 10SC Production 16.1 (or higher), 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator / IS Manager	Reference manual: Oracle Applications Developer's Guide

After reviewing the results of the migration and the report you created in Category 2, Step 1, you may need to modify migrated lookups and custom modules if they reference truncated lookup codes or renamed lookup meanings.

During the upgrade, the original JA lookup tables (JA_LOOKUP_TYPES and JA_LOOKUPS) are renamed to JA_LOOKUP_TYPES_OLD and JA_LOOKUPS_OLD, respectively. Views with the original table names are created instead. These views are based on FND lookup tables to which JA lookups are migrated. The upgrade does not remove these _OLD tables. You can use them as a reference if you need to manually change the migrated lookups or customized modules.

If your customized modules reference obsolete lookups, you may need to manually migrate the obsolete lookups from the _OLD tables. (Release 11i Oracle Applications generic modules do not reference obsolete lookups.)

Additional Information: Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*

Oracle Financials Common Country Features Tasks

	Perform for this country...
1. Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation (conditionally required)	All

Step 1: Upgrade descriptive flexfield dates to use the new AOL date validation (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7
Performed by: Database Administrator	

The validation for date fields within globalization flexfields was changed so that you can correctly store and retrieve date information in globalization flexfield attribute columns, regardless of the language that was used when dates were entered. Run this script to upgrade date values in the flexfield columns:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzupgd.sql
```

Because the language that you use determines the way dates are entered, you should run this script once for each language that is installed.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

Perform the following Category 4 tasks to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because they are closely related, the tasks for Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process have been combined under one heading.

Oracle e-Commerce Gateway Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Report output interface data file definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Both ECEUGR.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECELAYDR.sql (for Release 11.0) generate a report of output interface definitions after the upgrade, which can assist in restoring definitions you need at your site. Run the script (for either Release 10.7 or Release 11.0) and compare your data definitions with the ones in the report you ran in Category 2. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR.sql
```

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECELAYDR.sql
```

Step 2: Report cross-reference data definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Both ECEUGR2.sql (for Release 10.7) and ECEXREFR.sql (for Release 11.0) generate a report of cross-reference data definitions after the upgrade, which can assist in restoring the definitions you need at your site. Run the script (for either Release 10.7 or Release 11.0) and compare your data definitions with the ones in the report you ran in Category 2. Enter the name of the output file and the transaction code (select from list of values) at the prompts.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEUGR2.sql
```

If you are upgrading from Release 11.0:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $EC_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %EC_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ECEXREFR.sql
```

Public Sector Product Family

Perform the following Category 4 tasks to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Verify new profiles (required)	Database Administrator/System Administrator
2. Run migration driver (required)	Database Administrator/Applications Specialist (Grants)
3. Verify billing amounts (required)	Applications Specialist/Technical Specialist (Grants)
4. Verify award balances (required)	Applications Specialist/Technical Specialist (Grants)

Step 1: Verify new profiles (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Requires concurrent manager: **No**

Reference manual: **No** :Performed by: **DBA or System Administrator**

Verify the values for the following profiles:

- number of parallel threads
- number of awards processed per commit
- update open/close awards.

Step 2: Run migration driver (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**

Reference manual: **No** Performed by: **Database Administrator/System Administrator**

Apply the Grants Accounting data migration driver (gmsup115.drv). It is located in \$GMS_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %GMS_TOP%\patch\115\driver (NT).

Step 3: Verify billing amounts (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist/Technical Specialist (Grants)
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

Run gmsuprb1.sql to list the pre-upgrade and post-upgrade invoice and revenue amounts. The script prompts you for an output file name.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GMS_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsuprb1.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GMS_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsuprb1.sql
```

The pre-upgrade and post-upgrade amounts in the output file should be identical. If there are differences, contact Oracle Support Services.

Step 4: Verify award balances (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist or Technical Specialist (Grants)
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: Yes

Run gmsuprba.sql to list the pre-upgrade and post-upgrade invoice and revenue amounts by award and project. The script prompts for an output file name.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GMS_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsuprba.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GMS_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsuprba.sql
```

The pre-upgrade and post-upgrade balances should be identical. Balances that are not identical are flagged as UNMATCHED in the MATCH column. If there are differences, contact Oracle Support Services.

Environment Verification Tasks

Perform the following tasks to verify your post-install environment.

Checklist	Performed by
1. Verify application server DAD (required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Verify application server DAD (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Yes	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Applications

Verify that the DAD you have set up for the APPS schema is working properly.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Category 5 — Before Using Your Products

This chapter describes the Category 5 steps — they affect only a specific product, making it unavailable until the steps are complete.

- Oracle General Ledger Tasks 5-2
- Global Accounting Engine Tasks 5-4
- Oracle Payables Tasks 5-8
- Oracle Projects Tasks 5-10
- Oracle Receivables Tasks 5-23
- Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks 5-30
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks 5-31
- Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks 5-32
- Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks 5-34
- Oracle Human Resources/Payroll Tasks (U.S., U.K., and Japan) 5-43
- Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks 5-46
- Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning Tasks 5-48
- Oracle Order Management Tasks 5-49
- Oracle Purchasing Tasks 5-56
- Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks, 5-64
- Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks 5-66

Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 5 tasks to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Migrate conflicting daily rates (conditionally required)	Database Administrator/ Application Specialist (GL)

Step 1: Migrate conflicting daily rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger (Public Sector GL) User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle General Ledger

Perform this step if you:

- maintain daily rates for more than one set of books in the same Release 10.7 Applications installation.
- want to retain descriptive flexfield information associated with your daily rates.

You will use the SQL*Plus script discussed in Step 3 of this task to migrate all the daily rates for which you want to retain descriptive flexfield information.

Note: Even though users should not log on before you complete this step, the person performing the upgrade can log on to check the upgrade success or failure, examine upgraded daily rates, or define new conversion types.

To migrate conflicting daily rates:

1. Run the Daily Rates Conflict report using the following SQL*Plus script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtrpt.sql
```

2. Review the report to see if any daily rates conflict. If no conflicts exist, and you do not want to retain any descriptive flexfields associated with your daily rates, omit the remainder of this step.
3. If conflicting rates exist, or if you want to retain descriptive flexfields, run the following script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glurtmrt.sql
```

The script requires the following parameters:

For this parameter...	Enter the following...
Set of Books Name	the name of the set of books from which you want to transfer rates.
From Conversion Type	the conversion type of the rates to be transferred.
From Currency	the From currency of the rates to be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates for all From currencies.
From Date	the starting date (in the format DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates will be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer rates starting with the earliest date for which daily rates are defined.
To Date	the ending date (in the format DD-MON-YYYY) in the range of dates for which daily rates will be transferred. Or, enter ALL to transfer all rates starting with the From Date up to and including the most recent date for which daily rates are defined.
Destination Conversion Type	the conversion type to assign to the rate after it has been transferred. This conversion type must already exist.
Override Flag	Y if you want to replace rates that already exist in the rate set. Enter N if you only want to add new rates to the rate set.

Note: Do not use leading or trailing spaces when entering these parameters. Also note that the parameters are case-sensitive.

- 4. To retain descriptive flexfield information for your daily rates, use the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window to redefine the daily rates descriptive flexfields you used in Release 10.7.

Attention: You must define the descriptive flexfields in the new GL_DAILY_RATES table because the Release 10.7 definitions are not transferred from the GL_DAILY_CONVERSION_RATES table.

Global Accounting Engine Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Migrate existing date and non-integer data (required)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist
2. Update existing balances and accounting lines (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / System Administrator
3. Migrate obsolete event types and document statuses (required)	System Administrator
4. Update the Transfer to GL posted flag (required)	System Administrator
5. Populate tax information for accounting lines (required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Migrate existing date and non-integer data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator / Application Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Applications Product Update Notes, Oracle Applications Global Accounting Engine User's Guide, Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual	Do before anyone uses: Global Accounting Engine, Oracle Receivables, Oracle Payables, or Oracle Inventory

Scripts are available to migrate date and non-integer data that was previously stored in character columns to the date and number columns. You must complete the following tasks before you run the scripts:

- 1. Set the NLS_DATE_FORMAT environment variable to DD-MON-RR.
- 2. Ensure that NLS_LANG is set to the same language used prior to upgrading.

3. Ensure that NLS_NUMERIC_CHARACTERS is set to the same format used prior to upgrading.

Note: These scripts were designed to migrate data originally created in one language, one numeric character format, and a date format of either DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD. When you run them, an error message appears if more than one language, one numeric character format, or a date format other than DD-MON-RR or YYYY/MM/DD was used to store the date in the character column. If you get this error message, update the character column values to use the same format before you run these scripts.

Run this script to migrate data for the AX_SLE_LINES table:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos01.sql <batchsize>
```

Run this script to migrate data for the AX_DOCUMENT_STATUSES table. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos02.sql <batchsize>
```

Step 2: Update existing balances and accounting lines (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7

Performed by: Database Administrator /
System Administrator

Reference manual: Oracle Applications Global
Accounting Engine User's Guide, Oracle Application
Object Library Technical Reference Manual

Do before anyone uses: Global Accounting
Engine

If you determined in Category 2, Step 3 that the balance calculation patch was applied in Release 10.7, you can omit this step. If the patch was not applied, run `axxpos03.sql` now to update your existing balances and accounting lines:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos03.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos03.sql
```

Note: This script may take a long time to complete because it updates all accounting lines and balances. It must run to completion before users can use the Global Accounting Engine.

Step 3: Migrate obsolete event types and document statuses (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual	Do before anyone uses: Global Accounting Engine

Prior to this release, the `AP_CE_CLEAR` event type was used to specify a clearing or unclearing event. In Release 11i, two new event types, `CASH_CLEARED` and `CASH_UNCLEARED`, are used to specify a clearing and unclearing event, respectively. New event types are: `FUTURE_MATURED`, `PREPAYMENT_APPLIED`, and `PREPAYMENT_UNAPPLIED`.

This Event Type...	Is Changed to...
<code>AP_CE_CLEAR</code>	<code>CASH_CLEARED</code>
<code>AP_CE_CLEAR</code>	<code>CASH_UNCLEARED</code>
<code>FUTURE_CLEARED</code>	<code>FUTURE_CLEARED</code>
<code>FUTURE_REVERSED</code>	<code>FUTURE_UNCLEARED</code>

Run this script to update the `AX_EVENTS` and `AX_DOCUMENT_STATUSES` tables to use new event types. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos04.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos04.sql <batchsize>
```

Step 4: Update the Transfer to GL posted flag (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Global Accounting Engine

The Transfer to GL program posted flag is at the accounting header level for posted accounting entries. Run axxpos05.sql to transfer the posted flag from the line to the header level for all existing accounting entries and update the accounting lines. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos05.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos05.sql <batchsize>
```

Step 5: Populate tax information for accounting lines (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Global Accounting Engine

The upgrade adds new columns to the AX_SLE_LINES table to support tax reporting. Run axxpos06.sql to populate these columns with tax information for your upgraded accounting lines. Use a batchsize that is appropriate for your environment.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AX_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos06.sql <batchsize>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AX_TOP%\patch\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @axxpos06.sql <batchsize>
```

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Remodify payment formats (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Set up prepayment payment terms (recommended)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Remodify payment formats (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Setting Up Custom Formats, Payment Formats, and Defining and Maintaining Payables Payment Documents (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Payables

You do *not* need to perform this step if you are upgrading from an English-only installation and have never renamed or modified the attributes of any Payables seeded payment format.

Attention: Unless these two conditions are true, you *MUST* do this step for all Latin American countries that have country-specific Payment Formats (Argentine, Brazil, Chile, and Colombia). It must be performed for both Release 10.7 and Release 11.0 installations.

In Release 11, we enhanced the architecture of each of the seeded payment formats. If you modified Release 10.7 payment formats, you need to replace them with the Release 11/11*i* formats. A payment format may have been modified as follows:

- You renamed it in the Payment Formats window.
- You changed its attributes in the Payment Formats window.
- Oracle translated the name for a non-English version of Payables.

Perform this step to ensure all Release 11 payment formats use the same names and attributes as the payment formats you used before the upgrade. This will provide continued support of your Payables seeded payment formats in future releases.

During the upgrade, the system identifies each Payables seeded payment format that requires this step and adds a @ symbol to the beginning of its name. Run the following script to create a list of all modified payment formats assigned to payment documents:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apucfrpt.sql
```

This script produces the apucfrpt.lst report, which lists the following values for each modified payment format that you have assigned to a payment document: Bank, Branch, Account, Payment Document, and Payment Format.

For each payment format on the report, perform the following steps.

1. In the Payment Formats window, query the name of the seeded (unmodified) payment format you used to create your modified payment format.
2. Duplicate the attributes and name of the modified payment format.
3. Save your work.
4. Open the Payment Documents window of the Banks form and query the payment document to which you had assigned the modified payment format.
5. In the Payment Format field, delete the @ from the payment format name so that it matches the new Release 11-based payment format name.
6. Save your work.

Step 2: Set up prepayment payment terms (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Payment Terms (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Payables

The prepayment functionality was completely re-coded for Release 11i. In order to get the same default behavior (payment terms of Immediate when entering a prepayment-type invoice), you must set up prepayment payment terms. This step sets up default payment terms for your Prepayment invoice types. For example, you may want to default Immediate payment terms to all prepayments.

1. For each operating unit, choose Setup > Invoice > Payment Terms.
2. In the Payment Terms window, define the payment terms that you want to use as the default for all prepayments. Save your work.

3. For each operating unit, navigate to the Payables Options window (Setup > Options > Payables).
4. Select the Invoice tabbed region. In the Prepayment Payment Terms field, enter the default payment terms. Save your work.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations (required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Update project status values (required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
3. Update customized billing extensions (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
4. Review and update billing cycle names (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
5. Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
6. Populate billing title for employee assignments (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
7. Set up the invoice rounding account (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
8. Add new parameters to custom invoice-related client extensions (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
9. Add new parameters to custom transaction control extension (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
10. Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
11. Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
12. Reinstall custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
13. Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
14. Update the currency and the billing and shipping addresses of draft invoices (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
15. Drop invalidated packages (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Review organization hierarchies and uses of organizations (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

In Release 10.7 and earlier, you could control which organizations were used as Project Task Owning/Invoice Organizations by Operating Unit. That is, the same organization could be a Project/Task Owning/Invoice Organization in one operating unit but not in a different one. This could happen if you had specified different Project Organization Types for the operating units in the PA implementations option.

In Release 11.0 and later, the Project Organization type is not used to identify the organizations that own project/tasks or invoices. Instead, the organization classifications Project/Task Owning Organization and Invoice Organization specified at the organization level are used for this purpose. (Organizations are shared among operating units in a business group). Therefore, after the upgrade, you might have organizations in some operating units that you did not intend to use as Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organizations. Run the following script to determine the organizations that were upgraded under this condition:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @paupgor2.sql
```

The script paupgor2.sql creates a report, paxupor2.lst in \$PA_TOP/admin/sql (UNIX) or %PA_TOP%/admin/sql (NT). It shows the organizations for each operating unit that you designated in Release 10.7 or earlier as project or invoice organizations.

If the report contains any data, you must define a new organization hierarchy for each related operating unit that does not contain the listed organizations. Then, assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organization in the PA Implementation Options.

To build an organization hierarchy:

1. Navigate to the Organization Hierarchy window (Setup > Human Resources > Organizations > Hierarchies).

- 2. Use this window to enter a new organization hierarchy, or copy an organization hierarchy from an existing one and modify it.
- 3. Save your work.

To assign the new organization hierarchy as the new Project/Task Owning or Invoice Organization:

- 1. Navigate to the Implementation Options window (Setup > System > Implementation Options).
- 2. Select the Project Setup tab.
- 3. Enter the new organization hierarchy you created in the appropriate Organization Hierarchy field - Project/Task owning or Invoice.

Additional Information: Organizations in Oracle Projects, Organization Hierarchy, and Implementation Options, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 2: Update project status values (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

You can now enter values for the System Status field in the Project Status window. During the upgrade, Oracle Projects populated each of your user-defined project statuses with the System Status of Upgraded. You must update each of these statuses with the appropriate System Status value.

- 1. Navigate to the Project Statuses window (choose Setup > Projects > Statuses).
- 2. Query all the records with a System Status of Upgraded.
- 3. For each of the project statuses displayed, select the appropriate System Status from the list of values. You can also change the status controls (actions allowed for each project status), which were set to default values during the upgrade.
- 4. Save your changes.
- 5. Run the query until there are no records with a System Status of Upgraded.

Additional Information: Project Statuses, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 3: Update customized billing extensions (conditionally required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**Performed by: **Technical Specialist**Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and use predefined public procedures in billing extensions.

Oracle Projects provides public procedures to be used in your billing extensions. The names of these procedures have been changed to comply with Oracle Applications naming standards. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, you must modify the extensions to use the new procedure names.

Old Name: package.procedure	New Name: package.procedure
pb_public.insert_event	pa_billing_pub.insert_event
pb_public.insert_message	pa_billing_pub.insert_message
pb_public.get_budget_amount	pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount

In addition, new parameters have been added to the procedures. If your company uses any of the Oracle Projects predefined public procedures in your billing extensions, then you must add these new parameters to the billing extensions. The new parameters that have been added to the public procedures are:

Package.Procedure	New Parameters
pa_billing_pub.insert_event	x_audit_amount(1-10) x_audit_cost_budget_type_code x_audit_rev_budget_type_code x_error_message x_status
pa_billing_pub.insert_message	x_error_message x_status

Package.Procedure	New Parameters
pa_billing_pub.get_budget_amount	p_cost_budget_type_code p_rev_budget_type_code x_cost_budget_type_code x_rev_budget_type_code x_error_message x_status

Additional Information: Billing Extensions, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 4: Review and update billing cycle names (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing.

Your project billing cycle data has been upgraded to the enhanced billing cycle model. Billing cycles were created, based on your existing projects, as follows:

Billing Cycle Field	Value
Name	Billing Cycle Days: <i>n</i> (<i>n</i> = the value of Bill Cycle Days)
Type	Bill Cycle Days
Bill Cycle Days	The value of Billing Cycle for a project

Each project was associated with the new billing cycle name. You can change them if necessary:

1. Navigate to the Billing Cycles window (Setup > Billing > Billing Cycle). It displays the Name, Type, Value, and Effective Dates for all billing cycles created during the upgrade.
2. Review the upgraded billing cycle names and change as appropriate. Save your work.

Additional Information: Billing Cycles, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 5: Convert custom overtime calculation program to PL/SQL (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have implemented Projects Overtime Calculation.

The overtime calculation process was converted to the Overtime Calculation Extension, a PL/SQL procedure in PAXDLCOS.pls and PAXDLCOB.pls, located in the sql subdirectory under the admin directory. If you have customized PAXDLCOT.rpt, you must rewrite your customizations in the new files.

Additional Information: Overtime Calculation Extension, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 6: Populate billing title for employee assignments (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Projects User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Projects**

Perform this step only if you have installed Project Billing and implemented employee billing titles for your invoice formats.

Oracle Projects now looks for an employee billing title in the TITLE column of the PER_ASSIGNMENTS_F table, instead of in the descriptive flexfield column (ASS_ATTRIBUTE1) of the same table. You must populate the billing title on the employee assignments in the new column. A sample script populates the TITLE column with the contents of the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column and sets the ASS_ATTRIBUTE1 column to null. If the flexfield has been set up, you must modify this script appropriately. To run the script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pallu506.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pallu506.sql
```

Additional Information: Employees and Employee Assignments, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 7: Set up the invoice rounding account (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist / Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

If you have Project Billing installed, you must set up the Rounding AutoAccounting Function Transaction for the function Transfer Revenue and Invoice Account. You must set up this function regardless of whether you plan to bill customers in currencies other than the project functional currency.

1. Navigate to the Assign AutoAccounting Rules window (choose Setup > AutoAccounting > Assign Rules).
2. In the Function Name field, select Revenue and Invoice Accounts, then choose Find. The function transactions for Revenue and Invoice Accounts are displayed in the Function Transactions region.
3. Check the Enabled check box to enable the Rounding Account. Enter segment rule pairings to set up the account. Save your work.

Additional Information: AutoAccounting, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 8: Add new parameters to custom invoice-related client extensions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist/Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

Complete this step only if you have Project Billing installed and have customized the Automatic Invoice Approve/Release client extension or the AR Transaction Types client extension.

The following table lists procedures affected by this change, and the file where the procedure is located. If your company uses any of these client extensions, you must

add these new parameters to the client extensions. The files are located in \$PA_TOP/admin/sql UNIX) or %PA_TOP%\admin\sql (NT).

Client Extension	Procedure Name	File
AR Transaction Types	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Transfer.Get_AR_Trx_Type	PAXPTRXB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Approve_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls
Automatic Invoice Approve/Release	PA_Client_Extn_Inv_Actions.Release_Invoice	PAXPIACB.pls

The following parameters have been added to these client extensions:

Parameter Name	Description
p_project_currency_code	project currency code
p_project_amount	project currency amount
p_inv_currency_code	invoice currency code
p_invoice_amount	invoice currency amounts

Additional Information: AR Transaction Types Extension and Automatic Invoice Approval/Release Extension, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 9: Add new parameters to custom transaction control extension (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

Complete this step only if you have customized the transaction Control extension in Project Costing.

The following new parameters have been added to the Transaction Control extension. If your company uses this client extension, you must add these new parameters to your customized Transaction Control extension.

Parameter Name	Description
x_denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
x_denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount

Parameter Name	Description
x_acct_currency_code	functional currency code
x_acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
x_attribute11	descriptive flexfield segment 11
x_attribute15	descriptive flexfield segment 15
x_vendor_id	supplier identifier for supplier invoice transactions
x_msg_application	application identifier for the out message
x_msg_type	type of message (error or warning)
x_token1	token for display with message
x_token2	token for display with message
x_token3	token for display with message

Additional Information: Client Extensions, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 10: Add new currencies and non-recoverable tax amounts to commitment views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (for advanced users only)
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide, Oracle Cost Management User's Guide, and Oracle Project Management User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

New columns have been added in the commitment views to support multi-currency transactions, non-recoverable tax invoice lines, purchase order lines, and requisition lines. If you have customized these views, you must update them to include the new columns. The following commitment views have been changed:

PA_COMMITMENT_TXNS_V

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_raw_cost	transaction currency raw cost amount

New Column	Description
denom_burdened_cost	transaction currency burdened cost amount
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_raw_cost	functional currency raw cost amount
acct_burdened_cost	functional currency burdened cost amount
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

These columns have been deleted: tot_cmt_raw_cost, tot_cmt_burdened_cost, amount_delivered.

PA_PROJ_REQ_DISTRIBUTIONS and PA_PROJ_PO_DISTRIBUTIONS.

The AMOUNT column has been changed to include non-recoverable taxes.

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

PA_PROJ_AP_INV_DISTRIBUTIONS

Updated to include rows for non-recoverable tax invoice lines.

New Column	Description
denom_currency_code	transaction currency code
denom_amount	transaction currency amount (including non-recoverable tax amount)
acct_currency_code	functional currency code
acct_rate_date	exchange rate date used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount

New Column	Description
acct_rate_type	exchange rate type used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
acct_exchange_rate	exchange rate used to derive the functional currency raw cost amount
receipt_currency_code	receipt currency code
receipt_currency_amount	receipt currency amount
receipt_exchange_rate	receipt currency exchange rate

The following views in other applications have also been updated to include foreign currency columns and non-recoverable tax amounts:

- CST_PROMFG_CMT_VIEW
- PJM_REQ_COMMITMENTS_V
- PJM_PO_COMMITMENTS_V

Additional Information: *Commitments, Oracle Projects User's Guide; Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Project Management User's Guide*

Step 11: Update custom code that populates the Transaction Interface table (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

Perform this step only if you use the Transaction Import program in Project Costing. New columns have been added to the Transaction Interface table (PA_TRANSACTION_INTERFACE_ALL) to support multi-currency transactions and supplier invoices import. If you use the Transaction Import program to import costed transactions, you must update any custom programs that populate this table. For costed transactions, raw cost should now be inserted into the denom_raw_cost column, and burdened cost into the denom_burdened_cost column. You will find the list of new columns on Page 25-26 of *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Step 12: Reinstall custom client extension packages and views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

You backed up custom client extensions or commitment views in Category 3, Step 3. Reinstall the customized client extension packages and views in the APPS account.

Additional Information: Client Extensions, *Oracle Projects User's Guide*

Step 13: Correct FIFO marking of expenditure items (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Users must log off: Oracle Projects

Perform this step only if you have Oracle Project Billing installed.

This step pertains to FIFO marking of expenditure items with scheduled payment events in the Generate Draft Invoices process, for projects using the revenue accrual method Cost or Event. Prior to this upgrade, the Generate Draft Invoices process marked as “billed” all the expenditure items with an expenditure item date earlier than the bill through date of the process. Projects now marks expenditure items for scheduled payment events as “billed”, only up to the event amount.

Run pa630505.sql from your new APPL_TOP to correct the Billed flag for expenditure items that were incorrectly marked for scheduled payment events.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pa630505.sql
```

The script prompts for Start Project Number and End Project Number.

To reduce processing time, enter a value at the Start Project Number and an End Project Number prompts to run the script for a range of projects at a time. *Make sure that you run the script for all projects.*

Step 14: Update the currency and the billing and shipping addresses of draft invoices (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects Billing

Perform this step only if you Oracle Project Billing.

For draft invoices and draft invoice items, updating the currency enables you to bill in any currency. Updating the billing and shipping addresses enables you to calculate the tax base on the customer bill to or ship to site.

Running p1392293.sql changes the bill-to and ship-to addresses from NOT NULL to NULL in the draft invoices table. Running p111u10a.sql updates the currency and the bill-to and ship-to addresses in the draft invoices and draft invoice items table.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @p1392293.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @p111u10a.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @p1392293.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @p111u10a.sql
```

Step 15: Drop invalidated packages (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Projects User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Projects

Drop the following invalidated packages to ensure a smooth upgrade.

PA_BUDGET_UPGRADE_PKG	PA_PURGE
PA_PURGE_BILLING	PA_PURGE_CAPITAL
PA_PURGE_COSTING	PA_PURGE_EXTN
PA_PURGE_EXTN_VALIDATE	PA_PURGE_SUMMARY
PA_PURGE_VALIDATE	PA_PURGE_VALIDATE_BILLING
PA_PURGE_VALIDATE_CAPITAL	PA_PURGE_VALIDATE_COSTING

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @padrpprg.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PA_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @padrpprg.sql
```


Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
2. Recreate custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
3. Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information (required)	System Administrator
4. Create contexts and segments for new flexfields (required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Create indexes on transaction flexfield columns (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

Perform this step only if you use AutoInvoice.

Create indexes on your transaction flexfield columns so you can query transaction flexfield information in your invoice headers and lines and speed up validation.

Define *non-unique*, concatenated indexes on the following tables and columns that you use for your Line Transaction Flexfield and your Transaction Flexfield:

Table	Columns
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-15 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL	interface_header_attribute1-15 interface_header_context

To find columns used for the Line Transaction Flexfield, navigate to the Descriptive Flexfield Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Descriptive > Segments) and query the Line Transaction Flexfield. Note each context and which segments are enabled using interface line attribute columns from the RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL table. Then, create indexes for the interface line attribute and interface header attribute columns used for each attribute.

Additional Information: Transaction Flexfields, *Oracle Receivables (or Public Sector Receivables) User's Guide*

If you have only one context defined, you need to create only one index for each table in the list. However, if you have multiple contexts defined, you may want to create multiple indexes per table, according to your needs. For example, suppose your Line Transaction Flexfield has three contexts set up as follows:

Flexfield Context	Attribute Columns assigned to Enabled Segments
Context1	Interface_line_attribute1
Context1	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute1
Context2	Interface_line_attribute2
Context2	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute3
Context3	Interface_line_attribute9

You could create three indexes per table, one for each context, like this:

Index	Table	Columns
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF1 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-2 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF2 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF3 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT1	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-2 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT2	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT3	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context

Or, you could create two indexes — one for context3 and another for context2. Context1 uses the index for context2 because context2 has the same first two attribute columns as context1, like this:

Index	Table	Columns
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF1 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_INTERFACE_LINES_LTF2 (unique)	RA_INTERFACE_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context

RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT1	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute1-3 interface_line_context
RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_LFT2	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL	interface_line_attribute3, 9 interface_line_context

Oracle Projects and Oracle Order Entry use specific seeded contexts and enabled segments. Create a unique index for each combination of enabled segments. The number of segments differs based on the release level. These indexes assist in the lookups for those products.

If you have licensed Oracle Projects:

If users will be querying transactions based on project numbers, create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_PA1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL: interface_header_context and interface_header_attribute1.

If you have licensed Oracle Order Entry:

Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE1 on the following two columns in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL:

- interface_line_attribute 1
- interface_line_attribute2

Create an index RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_OE2 on the interface_line_attribute6 column in table RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES_ALL.

Additional Information: Importing Transactions Using
AutoInvoice, *Oracle Receivables* (or *Oracle Public Sector Receivables*)
User's Guide

Step 2: Recreate custom tax vendor extension views (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Receivables User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Receivables User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Receivables**

Complete this step if you implemented the Tax Vendor Extension and customized any of the following Oracle Tax Vendor Extension views:

SO_TAX_LINES_SUMMARY_V	SO_TAX_LINES_CREDIT_CHECK_V
TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V	TAX_LINES_RECURR_INVOICE_V
TAX_LINES_ENGINE_REVERSE_V	TAX_LINES_CREATE_V

TAX_LINES_DELETE_V

TAX_ADJUSTMENTS_V

Attention: If your tax vendor is Taxware® Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex® Quantum, and you have implemented descriptive flexfields, you must perform an additional step. It is described in *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum Release 11i* or *Integrating Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System*.

For example, you created a file called custom1.sql, which contains the script for customizing the view TAX_LINES_CREATE_V. Recreate the view by typing:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<directory>/<file>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @<directory>/<file>
```

where <directory> is the location of custom1 script and <file> is the name of the custom file.

Add new columns to views:

In Category 1, Step 2, you made copies of your customized views or created a script to reinstall them. Before reinstalling these views, you need to add the additional columns created in Release 11i. To see how the new views are written, execute the following command:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
```

Look at the new view by executing the following commands:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
SQL> spool view
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='TAX_LINES_CREATE_V';
SQL> exit
```

This creates a file called view.lst that contains the definition of the predefined view. To view the definition of your customized view, do the following:

```
SQL> set long 1000000
```

```
SQL> spool customview
SQL> select text from user_views where view_name='<CUSTOM_VIEW>';
SQL> exit
```

where <CUSTOM_VIEW> is the name of your customized view. This creates a file called customview.lst. Compare the contents of customview.lst and view.lst to see which columns and conditions you need to add.

The structure of your customized view must be exactly the same as the view shipped with Oracle Receivables. For example, the number, order, and data type of each column must be the same as the TAX_LINES_CREATE_V view.

Rename customized views:

To reduce the number of steps in future upgrades and so that installations with multiple organizations can control which users call an installed third-party application for tax calculations, Oracle Receivables uses a naming structure to group views into sets.

Note: If you have made customizations to a view(s), you must rename *all* views to meet the new naming standard.

To rename a customized view, execute the following commands:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password>
SQL> rename <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> to <NEW_VIEW_NAME>
```

where <CUSTOM_VIEW_NAME> is the name of your customized view and <NEW_VIEW_NAME> is the new name of the view, using the new naming standard listed as follows:

For Oracle	(no additional naming structure)
For TaxWare(AVP)	_A added to the view name
For Vertex	_V added to the view name
For Custom 1	_1 added to the view name
For Custom 2	_2 added to the view name

- For Custom 3 _3 added to the view name
- For Custom 4 _4 added to the view name
- For Custom 5 _5 added to the view name

For example, the TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V view would have the following naming structure:

- For Oracle TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V
- For Taxware TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_A
- For Vertex TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_V
- For Custom 1 TAX_LINES_INVOICE_IMPORT_V_1

Step 3: Update tax vendor descriptive flexfield information (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System or Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Receivables

Complete this step if your tax vendor is either Taxware Sales/Use Tax System or Vertex Quantum. In this release, the point of order acceptance, point of order origin, ship-to, ship-from, and tax exemption information must be entered in the Receivables Salesforce, Organization, and System Options windows. Run ar115vdr.sql to copy existing information in the descriptive flexfields to the new Release 11i columns. The script header describes the necessary parameters:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115vdr.sql
```

Additional Information: *Implementing Oracle Receivables with Taxware Sales/Use Tax System; Implementing Oracle Receivables with Vertex Quantum*

Step 4: Create contexts and segments for new flexfields (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **System Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications
Flexfields Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Customer enhancements**

The upgrade changes the names of some of the tables containing customer information and also installs new flexfields that refer to the new tables. (After you have completed the installation, the old flexfield titles will have the letters OLD appended.) In this step, you copy the Context Field Values and the values in the Segments Summary from the old flexfields to the new ones.

The following table lists the new flexfields.

Obsolete Flexfield	New Flexfield
Customer Information OLD	Customer Information
Address Information OLD	Address Information
Site Use Information OLD	Site Use Information
Customer Credit Profile Information OLD	Customer Credit Profile Information
Customer Profile Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Amounts
Telephone Number Information OLD	Telephone Number Information
Contact Role Information OLD	Contact Role Information
Customer Relationship Information OLD	Customer Relationship Information
Remit Address OLD	Remit Address
Credit Profile Class Information OLD	Credit Profile Class Information
Customer Profile Class Amounts OLD	Customer Profile Class Amounts
Contact Information OLD	Contact Information

1. Navigate to the Descriptive Flexfields Segments window. From the SysAdmin responsibility, choose Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.
2. Query the first new flexfield; for example, Customer Information. After you run the query, the Customer Information flexfield appears. It has no context information displayed.
3. Without closing the first Descriptive Flexfields Segment window, open a new instance of the same window.
4. Query the old flexfield; for example, Customer Information OLD.

- 5. Copy the values of the old Context Field Values region into the Context Field Values region of the new flexfield and save your work.
- 6. Choose the Segments button to open the Segments Summary window for the old flexfield.
- 7. Copy and paste the values in the old Segments Summary window into the new Segments Summary window.
- 8. Save your work.
- 9. Repeat this procedure for each of the remaining new flexfields.

Country-specific Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 5 tasks to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update customized menus that use JG submenus (conditionally required)	All
2. Enable the Swift Code field in the Enter Banks window (conditionally required)	Denmark, Norway, Finland, Switzerland

Step 1: Update customized menus that use JG submenus (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials Common Country Features
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes	

Oracle Financials Common Country Features now includes a separate seeded menu for each application within each country, instead of a single seeded menu as in prior releases. If you have custom menus that use old menus as submenu, you must update the custom menus to use the new JG menus instead.

For information on defining menus, refer to Menus Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. For details about the JG menus that are seeded in

Release 11i, refer to Oracle Financials Common Country Features, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Step 2: Enable the Swift Code field in the Enter Banks window (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Denmark, Finland, Norway, and Switzerland	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 character mode
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Denmark, Finland, Norway, and Switzerland

Run this script to enable the SWIFT Code field in the Payables Enter Banks window:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzswift.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzswift.sql
```

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Correct existing data before reporting tax information (required)	Korea

Step 1: Correct existing data before reporting tax information (required)

Perform for this country: Korea	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables and Receivables)	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Korea User Guide	

Before you enter any new transactions in Oracle Payables and Receivables, you must complete the setup as outlined in the Release 11i *Oracle Financials for Korea User Guide*. You must also perform the required setup for Korea if you want to report on transactions, such as invoices, payments, receipts, withholding and VAT distributions, that existed *before* the upgrade.

Warning: Since the overall setup, logic, and calculation process that generated your current withholdings and VAT distribution lines may differ from the functionality now provided in Release 11*i*, the extract and report data used by the Korean Withholding and VAT reports for transactions that were entered *prior* to the upgrade may show calculations that are not consistent with calculations on transactions that are entered *after* the upgrade.

Therefore, you may prefer to report withholdings and VAT only for transactions and respective account distributions that are entered *after* the upgrade date. You can accomplish this by using the GL Date range parameter in the reports.

The online help patch is also available through documentation patch 1338864.

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Upgrade character-mode responsibilities (recommended)	All
2. Update customized menus that use JE submenus (conditionally required)	All

Step 1: Upgrade character-mode responsibilities (recommended)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 (character mode)
Performed by: System Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Europe
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	

Release 11*i* is a GUI-only release — all character-mode responsibilities will be automatically disabled and no longer available after the upgrade is complete. You must re-implement responsibilities as though for a fresh install.

If you use...	these character-mode responsibilities are obsolete...
Oracle Payables, Receivables, or General Ledger	<country name> Local Payables, Local Receivables, and Local General Ledger for the following countries: Austria, Belgium, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Italy, The Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, and the U.K.

If you use...	these character-mode responsibilities are obsolete...
Oracle Assets	<country name> Local Assets for: Germany, Italy
Oracle Order Entry	Italian Local Order Entry and Italian Local Inventory

Oracle Financials for Europe includes a separate responsibility for each application within each country. Each existing GUI responsibility corresponds to one or more new responsibilities in Release 11i.

Old Responsibility in 10.7 and 11	New Responsibilities in 11i
Austrian Localizations GUI	Austrian AP Localizations and GL Localizations
Belgian Localizations GUI	Belgian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Czech Localizations (Release 11 only)	Czech AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Danish Localizations GUI	Danish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Finnish Localizations GUI	Finnish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
French Localizations GUI	French AP Localizations and GL Localizations
German Localizations GUI	German AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Greek Localizations (Release 11 only)	Greek AP Localizations, AR Localizations, FA Localizations, and GL Localizations
Hungarian Localizations (Release 11 only)	Hungarian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Israeli Localizations (Release 11 only)	Not available in Release 11i
Italian Localizations GUI	Italian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Netherlands Localizations GUI	Netherlands AP Localizations and GL Localizations
Norwegian Localizations GUI	Norwegian AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Polish Localizations (Release 11 only)	Polish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations

Old Responsibility in 10.7 and 11	New Responsibilities in 11i
Portuguese Localizations (Release 11 only)	Portuguese AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Spanish Localizations GUI	Spanish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Swedish Localizations GUI	Swedish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Swiss Localizations GUI	Swiss AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations
Turkish Localizations (Release 11 only)	Turkish AP Localizations, AR Localizations, and GL Localizations

Additional Information: Defining a Responsibility, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 2: Update customized menus that use JE submenus (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: All	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Europe
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes	

Oracle Financials for Europe now includes a separate seeded menu for each application within each country, instead of a single seeded menu as in prior releases. If you have custom menus that use the old menus as submenus, you must update the custom menus to use the new JE menus instead.

For details about defining menus, see Menu Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. For details about the JE menus that are seeded in Release 11i, see Oracle Financials for Europe, *Oracle Applications Product Update Notes*.

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Set the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)	Argentina, Chile

Checklist	Perform for this country...
2. Create new lookup codes (required)	Argentina, Colombia
3. Set tax system options (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia
4. Update sales orders and invoices (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia
5. Add warehouse name information (conditionally required)	Argentina, Brazil, Colombia
6. Associate tax information for each inventory organization location (conditionally required)	Brazil
7. Associate tax groups and tax categories (conditionally required)	Brazil, Argentina, Colombia
8. Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices (conditionally required)	Argentina, Colombia
9. Archive restored technical appraisals (conditionally required)	Columbia

Step 1: Set the value of the JL: Inflation Ratio Precision profile option (required)

Perform for this country: Argentina, Chile	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

Assign the profile option value that you recorded in Category 1, Step 1 to the new profile option.

Additional Information: Define Inflation Ratio Precision, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 2: Create new lookup codes (required)

Perform for this country: Argentina, Colombia	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, or 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)	Reference manual: Oracle Applications User's Guide

From the Application Developers responsibility, use the Application Object Library Lookups window (Application > Lookups > Application Object Library) to create

the following lookup codes. Do not enter values in the Start Date Active and End Date Active fields. Check the Enabled check box.

Lookup Code	Lookup Type	Notes
OBS-TC	JLZZ_AR_TX_CATEGORY	Perform only if upgrading from Release 11.0 and have not applied patch 839884. Assign existing tax codes to this obsolete tax category so that you can query previous tax codes without incurring error messages. This step also lets you view old transactions after you complete the subsequent steps.
OBS-COND	TRANSACTION_ATTRIBUTE	Perform only if upgrading from Release 10.7. Lets you view old transactions after you complete the subsequent steps. You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.
OBS-VALUE	JLZZ_AR_TX_ATTR_VALUE	Perform only if upgrading from Release 10.7. Lets you view old transactions after you complete the subsequent steps. You can view pre-upgrade transactions that did not fail mandatory validations.

Additional Information: Application Utilities Lookups and Application Object Library Lookups, *Oracle Applications User's Guide*

Step 3: Set tax system options (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Argentina, Colombia	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7
Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)	Reference manual: Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide; Oracle Receivables User's Guide

Set tax system options as part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade. Perform this step for every organization if you are using the multi-organization functionality.

1. Navigate to the System Options window (Argentine Receivables > Standard AR > Setup > System > System Options) or (Colombian Receivables > Oracle Receivables > Setup > System > System Options).
2. In the Tax alternate name region, check the Inclusive Tax Used check box and make sure that the Compound Taxes check box is unchecked.
3. In the Miscellaneous alternate name region, open the globalization flexfield.

4. Enter values in the Country Code, Use Legal Messages, and Tax Rule Set fields.

Additional Information: Define System Options, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*; Defining Receivables System Options, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*

Step 4: Update sales orders and invoices (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Argentina, Colombia	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7
Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)	Reference manual: No

This step is a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade. Be sure to repeat this step for each organization if you are using multi-organization functionality.

Before you update your sales orders and invoices, create obsolete tax codes, categories and classes for previous transactions and associate the obsolete tax categories with condition and values so that you can view your previously created transactions.

To create obsolete tax codes, categories, and classes for previous transactions: Use the Argentine Receivables or Colombian Receivables responsibility for this step.

1. Create a tax category.

In the Latin Tax Categories window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Categories), create a tax category for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TC
Effective From	01-JAN-1951
Effective To	31-DEC-4712
Threshold Check Level	Line
Grouping Condition Type	Line
Grouping Condition	Line

Additional Information: Define Tax Categories, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

2. Create a tax code.

In the Tax Codes and Rates window (Argentina—Standard AR > Setup > Tax > Codes, or Colombia—Oracle Receivables > Setup > Tax > Codes), create a tax code for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE
Tax Type	Value Added Tax (VAT)
Taxable Basis	Before Discount
Tax Rate %	0.00
Effective Dates - From	01-JAN-1951
Effective Dates - To	<Leave blank>
Enabled	Checked
Displayed	Checked
Tax Category (in Globalization Flexfield)	OBS-TC

Additional Information: Define Tax Codes and Rates, *Oracle Receivables Tax User's Guide*

3. Create a fiscal classification code.

In the Latin Fiscal Classifications window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Fiscal Classifications), create a fiscal classification code for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Fiscal Classification Code	OBS-FISCAL
Displayed Value	OBS-FISCAL
Description	OBS-FISCAL
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712
Tax Category	OBS-TC
From Date	01-JAN-1951
To Date	31-DEC-4712
Tax Code	OBS-TAX-CODE

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Enabled	Checked

Additional Information: Define Fiscal Classifications, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

4. Create a transaction class.

In the Latin Tax Condition Classes window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Condition Classes), create a transaction class used for upgrading existing transaction and sales order data.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Class Type	Transaction Class
Class Code	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Description	OBS-TRANS-CLASS
Start Date Active	01-JAN-1951
End Date Active	31-DEC-4712
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Code	OBS-COND
Value Code	OBS-VALUE
Enabled	Checked

Additional Information: Define Tax Condition Classes for Transactions, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

To associate obsolete tax category with condition and values:

In the Associate Latin Tax Category with Conditions and Values window (Argentine (or Colombian) Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Conditions and Values), associate tax category OBS-TC with OBS-COND condition and OBS-VALUE value.

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Tax Category	OBS-TC
Condition Type	Transaction Condition
Condition Name	OBS-COND
Mandatory In Class	Checked

In this field/check box...	Enter this value...
Determining Factor	Checked
Grouping Attribute	Checked
Value	OBS-VALUE
Default To Class	Checked

Additional Information: Associate Tax Categories with Tax Conditions and Values, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

To update sales orders and invoices:

Run the following scripts to fill in the Tax Code, Fiscal Classification Code, and Transaction Condition Class fields with default values for all of your order lines and invoice lines. The script populates the Tax Code field only if it is blank. Specify the value for Country Code: AR (Argentina) or CO (Colombia).

Note: The scripts in this step are potentially long-running. You should plan your upgrade schedule accordingly.

To update sales orders, run `jlzztu01.sql`. Use `jlzztu01.lst` to review the results. Enter a country code as the parameter. The scripts shown in the examples assume an Argentine setup. In that case, enter AR as the <Country Code>.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu01.sql <Country Code> \
OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu01.sql <Country Code> \
OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

To update invoices, run `jlzztu02`. Use `jlzztu02.lst` to review the results.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jlzztu02.sql <Country Code> \
OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @j1zztu02.sql <Country Code> \
OBS-FISCAL OBS-TRANS_CLASS
```

Additional Information: Entering Transactions, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*; *Oracle Financials for Argentina User's Guide*; *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

Step 5: Add warehouse name information (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Brazil, Colombia** Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: System Administrator	Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Argentina User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Brazil User's Guide, Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide
---	---

In this release, warehouse information is mandatory for a transaction *if* the invoice line is an item line, *and* you selected *Latin Tax Handling* as the tax method in the Define System Options window.

If you want to modify upgraded transactions, you must enter the warehouse in the Warehouse Name field on the Transactions workbench. The warehouse that you enter defines an item validation organization for your ship-from location for this item line.

Step 6: Associate tax information for each inventory organization location (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Brazil** Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**

Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)	Reference manual: Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide
---	---

Perform this step only if you have *not* applied patch 786842 (Inventory org patch). This step is part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade.

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, enter a valid value for the Organization Class field in the globalization flexfield of the Location window (Standard AR > Setup > System > Organizations > Location). Perform this step for each inventory organization location, if you are using multi-org functionality.

Additional Information: Assign Tax Condition Classes to Organizations, Setting Up Globalization Flexfields, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 7: Associate tax groups and tax categories (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Brazil**Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (Receivables)**Reference manual: **Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide**

As a part of the Latin Tax Engine upgrade, perform this step if you *have not* previously applied patch 839884.

From the Brazilian Receivables responsibility, use the Latin Tax Groups window (Brazilian Localization > Setup > Latin Tax > Groups) to set up this association. Ensure that all tax groups have at least one tax category.

Additional Information: Define Tax Group, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 8: Cancel and re-enter all unapproved and unposted invoices (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Argentina, Colombia**Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**Reference manual: **Oracle Payables User's Guide**

Complete this step only if you *did not* install Latin American country-specific functionality in Release 11. All invoices that were/are to be transferred from the previous period to the new period will not have the withholding applicability or the additional information necessary for the Extended Withholding feature to function correctly. You must re-enter these invoices.

The Extended Withholding applicability takes place after you complete all the setup steps described in the Oracle Payables chapter of the *Oracle Financials for Argentina/Colombia User's Guide*.

Additional Information: Cancelling Invoices and Entering Invoices, *Oracle Payables User's Guide*

Step 9: Archive restored technical appraisals (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Colombia**Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (Assets)**Reference manual: **Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide**

Requires Concurrent Manager: **Yes**

Be sure to re-archive technical appraisals that you restored in Category 1, Step 3.

Additional Information: Archiving, Purging, and Restoring
Technical Appraisals, *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

HRMS Product Family

Perform the following Category 5 tasks to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family. Notice that these steps also apply to Oracle Payroll.

Oracle Human Resources/Payroll Tasks (U.S., U.K., and Japan)

Checklist	Performed by
1. Select legislation and college data with DataInstall (required)	Database Administrator
2. Run the global legislation driver (required)	Database Administrator
3. Run the exchange rate migration script (conditionally required)	Database Administrator
4. Associate a set of books with your organizational payment method (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (HR)

Step 1: Select legislation and college data with DataInstall (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Human Resources/Payroll

DataInstall is a Java utility that allows you to select the legislation for your enterprise. If you are upgrading a US or UK legislation, you can also use it to upgrade college data. DataInstall provides a series of menus from which you can specify the legislation and product combinations.

Note: You must also perform this step for Oracle Payroll.

If your legislation is US or UK:

See the DataInstall section in Appendix A of *Implementing Oracle HRMS* for complete instructions on running DataInstall to select legislation and college data.

Note: If you are upgrading Oracle Federal HR, choose Oracle Federal HR and Oracle Human Resources from the list of product localization combinations.

If your legislation is Japan:

Run DataInstall as described for the US and UK, and select the Japanese legislation.

Step 2: Run the global legislation driver (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: None	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Human Resources/Payroll

To deliver the generic entity horizon and all the country-specific financials products selected, apply the hrglobal.drv patch driver file. It is located in \$PER_TOP/patch/115/driver (UNIX) or %PER_TOP%\patch\115\driver (NT).

After applying the global legislation driver, examine hrlegend.lst. It logs any country-specific financial products selected in the Java utility that have not been applied by this driver. Refer to your installation manual to ensure everything has been applied correctly or contact Oracle Support Services.

If the legislation is U.K., examine the following out files:

- pegbutcl.lst Logs the step that removes previously seeded user tables for the U.K. legislation before delivering the latest version. It may also show where seed data names have been changed between releases.
- perleggb.lst Logs the housekeeping step that gets rid of redundant U.K. seed data after delivery of the latest version. It also records the new balance feeds that have been inserted following an upgrade from Oracle Human Resources to Oracle HRMS.

Both files are used by Oracle Support Services to diagnose problems with seed data. SQL errors indicate severe problems. Keep these files for future reference.

Note: You must also perform this step for Oracle Payroll.

Step 3: Run the exchange rate migration script (conditionally required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Database Administrator**Reference manual: **No**Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Human Resources**

In prior releases, exchange rates were stored within the Oracle Payroll exchange rates table (PAY_EXCHANGE_RATES_F). These rates are now located within the Oracle General Ledger (GL) exchange rates system.

Note: You do not need to have purchased Oracle GL in order to make use of the new exchange rate entry form.

If you use exchange rates, migrate your existing exchange rates from Payroll to General Ledger by running the following script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PAY_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PAY_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pyrtmig.sql
```

From the list of Business Groups, select one to migrate and enter its ID. To exit, leave blank and press Enter. Review the list of payrolls for which exchange rates exist and select the master payroll for this Business Group. To exit, leave blank and press Enter.

An exchange rate for a given date may exist on different payrolls. To prevent this occurrence in GL, existing rates for a given date it are overwritten by the new rate. The master payroll is the last payroll rate to be migrated, so the master rate takes precedence for a rate on a different payroll.

Enter the Conversion Type for which rates will be created. Existing Conversion Types are displayed. You will not be able to select the standard GL types, such as Corporate or Spot, to ensure that rates created by other applications are not interfered with. The Conversion Type should begin with HR. An error will occur if a different prefix is selected. A new Conversion Type will be created if the supplied name does not exist.

Your selections are displayed. Enter Y to continue. The system reports the number

of rows processed, and the error and rate details of rows that failed.

Note: You must also perform this step for Oracle Payroll.

Step 4: Associate a set of books with your organizational payment method (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (HR)
Reference manual: Using Oracle HRMS: The Fundamentals	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Human Resources

This step is required only if your payroll implementation has Cash Management installed. For more information, see Accounting Reference Information for Cash Management Integration, *Implementing Oracle HRMS*.

Note: This step is required for Oracle Payroll only if your payroll implementation has Cash Management installed. For more information, see Accounting Reference Information for Cash Management Integration, *Implementing Oracle HRMS*.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

Perform the following Category 5 tasks to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are closely related, the upgrade steps for these products have been combined under one heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Review and correct organization default accounts - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Inventory
2. Verify totals in inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
3. Verify balances in WIP Value reports (recommended)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost
4. Define default material subelement – Average Costing (conditionally required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
5. Define Average Rates cost type – Average Costing (conditionally required)	Manufacturing and Distribution Manager > Cost

Step 1: Review and correct organization default accounts - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

Review and correct, as necessary, your organization default accounts—sales and expense.

1. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Inventory. Navigate to the Organization Parameters window (Setup > Organizations > Parameters) and select the Costing Information tabbed region.
2. Update default account information and save your work.

Additional Information: Organization Parameters Window, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Step 2: Verify totals in inventory valuation reports - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Inventory)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Inventory User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Inventory**

Run the same inventory valuation reports that you ran in the Category 3, Step 4 (Elemental Value, Subinventory Value, and if you use intransit, the Intransit Value), using the same sort options with the default Release 11i parameters.

The totals by subinventory, subinventory account, cost element, and report totals should match. If they do not, compare the reports for any quantity or value differences, and proceed accordingly. Contact Oracle Support Services if you are unable to balance the reports.

Step 3: Verify balances in WIP Value reports (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist (Cost Management and/or Inventory)**

Reference manual: **Oracle Cost Management User's Guide; Oracle Inventory User's Guide** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Cost Management, Inventory, or WIP**

Follow the instructions in the Category 3, Step 5 to run this report. Compare the balances with the balances in the report you ran in the Category 3.

Step 4: Define default material subelement – Average Costing (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Inventory) or Application Specialist (Cost Management)
Reference manual: Oracle Inventory User's Guide and Oracle Cost Management User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Cost Management

If you have defined this subelement previously, you can omit this step. If you are using Oracle Project Management, you should define the default material subelement. As the Manufacturing and Distribution Manager, choose Cost. Navigate to the Material Subelements window (Setup > Subelements > Material).

Additional Information: Defining Subelements, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide*

Step 5: Define Average Rates cost type – Average Costing (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Inventory) / Application Specialist (Cost Management)
Reference manual: Oracle Inventory User's Guide and Oracle Cost Management User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Cost Management

If you have previously defined average rates cost types, you can omit this step. This cost type supports material overhead and WIP resources. To define Average Rates costs types, navigate to Setup > Cost Types.

Additional Information: Defining Cost Types, *Oracle Cost Management User's Guide*

Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Start the Planning Manager (required)	Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning)

Step 1: Start the Planning Manager (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (Master Scheduling/MRP / Supply Chain Planning)**Reference manual: **Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Master Scheduling/MRP and Supply Chain Planning**

The Planning Manager performs many tasks that require processing rows in an interface table, such as forecast consumption, master production schedule consumption, forecast interface load, schedule interface load, and master demand schedule relief. After the upgrade, you need to rerun your MPS, MRP, and DRP plans in order to review planning information.

1. Navigate to the Planning Manager window (Setup > Planning Manager).
2. Enter the processing interval for the Planning Manager and click Start.

Additional Information: Starting the Planning Manager and Planning Manager, *Oracle Master Scheduling/MRP and Oracle Supply Chain Planning*

Oracle Order Management Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Document upgrade errors (recommended)	System Administrator / Applications Specialist (Order Management)
2. Create OM profile option for the Cycles to Workflow upgrade (required)	System Administrator Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
3. Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management/Shipping)
4. Review upgraded transaction types (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
5. Set up processing constraints (required)	Applications Specialist (Order Management)
6. Set up flexfield definitions (required)	System Administrator
7. Review seeded attributes and their sequences (required)	Applications Specialist (Pricing)
8. Set up pricing profiles (required)	System Administrator Applications Specialist (Pricing)

Checklist	Performed by
9. Define pick slip grouping rules (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
10. Define release sequence rules (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
11. Define shipping parameters for inventory organizations (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
12. Define ship methods lookups and map to freight carriers (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)
13. Set up shipping execution profiles and menus (required)	Applications Specialist (Shipping Execution)

Step 1: Document upgrade errors (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator / Applications Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Order Management User's Guide, Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Entry/ Shipping or Shipping Execution

Run the following script to see if any Order Management records were not upgraded due to errors. This report is for information only.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontexc06.sql
```

Run wshuplog.sql to produce a list (wshuplog.lst) of errors that occurred during the Oracle Shipping Execution upgrade.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $WSH_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshuplog.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %WSH_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @wshuplog.sql
```

Step 2: Create OM profile option for the Cycles to Workflow upgrade (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **System Administrator /
Applications Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping
User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Order Entry/Shipping**

Run the loader file to create the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders profile option. It can only be set at a responsibility level and can be used to flag a given responsibility per FND_USER/Organization combination for the cycle history upgrade. You use this profile option in other Category 5 steps to set up OM responsibilities.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
$ FNDLOAD <user_id>/<password>@<database_name> O Y UPLOAD \
  $FND_TOP/patch/115/import/afscprof.lct \
  $ONT_TOP/patch/115/import/US/ontpfupg.ldt
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd $APPL_TOP/admin/out
C:\> FNDLOAD <user_id>/<password>@<database_name> O Y UPLOAD \
  C:\> FND_TOP/patch/115/import/afscprof.lct \
  C:\> ONT_TOP/patch/115/import/US/ontpfupg.ldt
```

Step 3: Set up responsibilities for order creation/manipulation (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **System Administrator /
Applications Specialist (Order Entry/Shipping)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Entry/Shipping
User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Order Entry/Shipping**

Run ontupg48.sql to create a list (ontupg48.lst) of the FND_USER(created_by)/Org combinations on all open headers and lines.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg48.sql
```

Then follow these steps:

1. Set up one (or more) OM (or non-OM) responsibilities for order creation/manipulation for every organization. At a minimum, set the ORG_ID(MO: Operating Unit) profile on these responsibilities (in a multi-org environment). From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Profile > System.
2. Assign appropriate responsibilities to each FND_USER based on the listing in ontupg48.lst. From the System Administrator responsibility, choose Security > User > Define. If for a given FND_USER there is more than one responsibility pointing to the same organization, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders profile option (created in the previous task) on *only one* responsibility. This responsibility, the application tied to it, and the User (who created the Order or line), will be used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines when they are processed in the background.

For example: There are 4 distinct users who have access to 3 distinct operating units in which they have created orders or lines.

User ID	Name	Org ID	Organization
1894	NDSMITH	498	Vision ADB
1894	NDSMITH	204	**US** Vision Operations US
1737	ECLARKE	600	Vision Project Manufacturing
1001	VISION	204	**US** Vision Operations JS
2501	DMARTIN	600	Vision Project Manufacturing

You would create 3 new OM or non-OM (if you plan to use a custom application on top of OM) responsibilities. Since this example is multi-org, set the MO: Operating Unit profile option to the appropriate value on each of these new responsibilities. And, set the OM:Context Responsibility for Upgraded Orders to Yes on each to flag them for use in the cycle history upgrade. Now, assign these new responsibilities appropriately to the 4 users so that they continue to have access to the same organizations that they did in the previous release. This results in only one flagged responsibility per Operating Unit for each of those 4 users. This responsibility, and the application tied to it, are used to set application context for Upgraded Orders and Lines as described previously.

3. Validate the responsibilities settings for user/org combinations created in this step by running ontupg49.sql.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $ONT_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %ONT_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ontupg49.sql
```

If you find errors in the report (ontupg49.lst), correct the settings and re-run the script to make sure the settings are correct.

Attention: If you do not correct errors found in ontupg49.lst before you complete the next step, you will not be able to process any of the affected orders/lines in OM.

Step 4: Review upgraded transaction types (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Order Management)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

1. Review the upgraded order and line types. Select Setup > Transaction Types > Define. Create new flow assignments since the upgraded assignments cannot be used for new orders or lines.
2. Review document sequences that were upgraded (based on order number sources in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Define.
3. Review the document categories that were upgraded (based on order types in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Categories.
4. Review the document sequence assignments that were upgraded (based on the order number source assignments in the old release). Select Setup > Documents > Assign.

Step 5: Set up processing constraints (required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Applications Specialist (Order Management)**Reference manual: **Oracle Order Management User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Order Management**

Processing constraints required for the OM entities were not included in the upgrade. To set them up, select Setup > Rules > Security > Processing Constraints.

Additional Information: *Oracle Order Management User's Guide*

Step 6: Set up flexfield definitions (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Order Management User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management

The upgrade automatically moves data from descriptive flexfield segments defined in the Order Entry tables to new tables in Order Management and registers new flexfields under Order Management for the new tables. In order to use this descriptive flexfield data, you must define and enable the flexfields according to your business needs. Select Application > Flexfield > Descriptive > Segments.

Step 7: Review seeded attributes and their sequences (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Pricing)
Reference manual: Oracle Pricing User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management

To review seeded attributes and their sequences, select Setup > Attribute Mapping.

Additional Information: *Oracle Pricing User's Guide*

Step 8: Set up pricing profiles (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator / Application Specialist (Pricing)
Reference manual: Oracle Pricing User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management

Set up any profiles you may need at the User/Responsibility/Site levels before you start using the Pricing product. From the System Administrator responsibility, select Profile > System, then select Setup > Profiles from the Pricing responsibility.

Additional Information: *Oracle Pricing User's Guide*

Step 9: Define pick slip grouping rules (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management
---	--

Define pick slip grouping rules to control the generation of pick slips during the Pick Release process. Select Shipping > Setup > Picking > Define Pick Slip Grouping Rules.

Additional Information: *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 10: Define release sequence rules (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management
---	--

Define release sequence rules to control the sequence in which allocation requests are made to the picking engine during the Pick Release process. Select Shipping > Setup > Picking > Define Release Sequence Rules.

Additional Information: *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 11: Define shipping parameters for inventory organizations (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management
---	--

Define shipping parameters for each inventory organization to control the overall behavior of the application within that organization. Select Shipping > Setup > Shipping Parameters.

Additional Information: *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 12: Define ship methods lookups and map to freight carriers (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management
---	--

Define ship method lookups in the Lookups Definitions window (Inventory > Setup > Organizations > Shipping Methods). Then map them to their respective carriers. Select Shipping > Setup > Freight > Define Carrier Ship Methods.

Additional Information: *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Step 13: Set up shipping execution profiles and menus (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Shipping Execution)
Reference manual: Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Order Management

During the upgrade, old profiles are made obsolete and new ones are seeded. Review the new profiles and set up appropriate values for the new Shipping Execution application. Select Shipping > Setup > Profiles.

In addition, references to the old shipping master menu are replaced with references to new menus. Review the new menu and set up comparable ones in the new Shipping Execution application.

Additional Information: *Oracle Shipping Execution User's Guide*

Oracle Purchasing Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Activate transaction managers for Multi-Org (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Upgrade notifications (conditionally required)	System Administrator
3. Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
4. Verify and modify sourcing rules (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator / Database Administrator
5. Verify date formats (required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
6. Verify RMA upgrade (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator

Step 1: Activate transaction managers for Multi-Org (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
--	---

Reference manual: Oracle Purchasing User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Purchasing in a Multi-Org setup
Requires concurrent manager: Yes	

This step applies only to installations that have a Multi-Org setup.

Activate the PO Document Approval Manager and the Receiving Transaction Manager for *each* operating unit:

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the Administer Concurrent Managers window by choosing Concurrent > Manager > Administer.
2. Choose PO Document Approval Manager and then choose Activate. Choose Receiving Transaction Manager and then choose Activate. (If you don't see an Activate button, then the transaction manager is already activated.)

Additional Information: Purchase Order Approval Workflow, Requisition Approval Workflow and Receiving Transaction Processor, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide; Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*

Step 2: Upgrade notifications (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 Character-mode, NCA, 10SC	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Purchasing User's Guide or Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Purchasing

In Release 11, the Notifications window has been replaced by a new Notifications Summary window, and all notifications are handled by Oracle Workflow technology. Workflow uses the approval controls and hierarchies you've already defined in Purchasing to route documents for approval. Release 11*i* recognizes existing notifications only if you upgrade them to Workflow notifications.

You need to upgrade existing notifications only if you currently have documents from Release 10.7 of Purchasing pending approval..

Additional Information: Viewing and Responding to Notifications and Approval Workflows, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

To upgrade notifications, you need to run the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process after you have set up Purchasing. This process routes existing documents

that are pending approval through the new approval workflow process, so that their notifications become Workflow notifications in Release 11*i*.

Important Prerequisites

Before you upgrade existing notifications, be sure to:

- Reduce the number of existing notifications by responding to as many of them as you can.
- Decide whether to customize your workflow now. This upgrade updates your notifications by routing them through whatever workflows you have now—for example, the default workflows included with this release of Oracle Purchasing. In general, only those documents that are submitted for approval *after* you customize an approval workflow are affected by that customized workflow. So, if you want your existing notifications to be routed according to your customized workflow rather than the one that comes with this release of Purchasing, customize and test it before you perform these upgrade steps.

To upgrade your existing notifications to Workflow notifications:

Complete the following steps for each operating unit.

1. Navigate to the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process (Purchasing > Reports > Run)
2. In the Requests window, select Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 in the Request Name field and choose Submit Request.
3. After the process is complete (when it has changed from Pending to Completed in the Requests window), select it in the Requests window and choose View Output to see if any errors occurred during the upgrade.

If you receive errors about Workflow not being set up properly, see the *Oracle Workflow Guide* for instructions on the proper setup of Oracle Workflow.

4. Ask document preparers and approvers to monitor the progress of their upgraded notifications in the Notifications Summary window and take action as necessary, in case errors were encountered during the upgrade.
5. After all your notifications have been upgraded, you may want to disable the Upgrade Notifications to Release 11 process so that no one tries to use it later.

In the System Administrator responsibility, you disable concurrent programs in the Concurrent Programs window by deselecting the Enabled check box.

Additional Information: Concurrent Programs Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 3: Set MRP profile options (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 Character-mode	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Purchasing

In Category 3, Step 1, you could not modify the default profile option values for MRP:Default Sourcing Assignment Set and MRP:Sourcing Rule Category Set for a character-based system as a pre-upgrade step. If you want to modify these profile option values, you can do so now. You must provide values for these profile options before you continue with the next step.

Step 4: Verify and modify sourcing rules (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 Character-mode, NCA, 10SC	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration / Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Purchasing

If you did not use AutoSource Rules in Release 10.7, you can omit this step.

AutoUpgrade converted all your existing AutoSource rules to the enhanced sourcing rules and Approved Supplier List (ASL) entries. Specifically, it performed the following upgrades:

- Created sourcing rule entries in the Sourcing Rule window in Purchasing, using the percentage splits you defined in the AutoSource Rules window in previous releases.
- Created global ASL entries, using your previous AutoSource rules.
- Assigned a supplier status of New to all your suppliers in the Approved Supplier List window.
- Upgraded source documents with current effective dates as well as dates that don't become effective until a future date.

To verify or modify sourcing rules:

In the following directory, use any text editor to check the upgrade.out file for errors that might have occurred during the AutoUpgrade process:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
```

where <dbname> is the value of your \$ORACLE_SID or \$TWO_TASK.

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

If errors appear in the upgrade.out file, fix them as described. Then, run the ASL Upgrade process in Purchasing. If there are no errors, proceed to the next step.

If you are upgrading from Release 10.7 character-mode:

AutoUpgrade records an error in the upgrade.out file. Because the MRP profile options could not be set before the upgrade, you must run the ASL Upgrade process now. It performs the same upgrade of your AutoSource rules as AutoUpgrade.

1. In the Purchasing responsibility, navigate to Reports > Run and select ASL Upgrade in the Request Name field. In the Parameters window that appears, enter a Supplier Status of New and an Upgrade Documents From option of Current and future rules. Then submit the request. *New and Current and future rules* are the only options supported by the ASL Upgrade process.
2. To verify that your AutoSource rules have been upgraded, open the Requisitions window in Purchasing and, in the Item field, enter an item number that previously had an AutoSource rule. Navigate to the Source Details tabbed region. If the correct Document Type, Document, Supplier and supplier Site appear as defaults, your AutoSource rules have been successfully updated.
3. Once the rules have been upgraded, disable the ASL Upgrade process. In the System Administrator responsibility, deselect the Enabled check box in the Concurrent Programs window.

Additional Information: Concurrent Programs Window, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

4. To make changes, additions, or enhancements to your sourcing rules and ASL entries, use the Purchasing responsibility to navigate to the Define Supplier Statuses, Approved Supplier List, Sourcing Rule, and Sourcing Rule/Bill of Distribution Assignments windows.

Additional Information: Setting Up Automatic Sourcing, *Oracle Purchasing User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector Purchasing User's Guide*

Step 5: Verify date formats (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Purchasing

During the upgrade, the REVISED_DATE column in the Purchasing tables was changed from a Varchar2 to a Date format, and your existing date information was moved from the REVISED_DATE column to a temporary table TEMP_REVISIED_DATE. After the column is converted to a Date format, the upgrade script copies your original dates from TEMP_REVISIED_DATE back into the affected tables. The TEMP_REVISIED DATE table still contains your original data as a backup. Before you run podold.sql (see the Finishing Your Upgrade chapter), which drops unneeded database objects including the TEMP_REVISIED_DATE table, run pockrvdt.sql to verify your dates:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PO_TOP/admin/sql/pockrvdt.sql \
    <PO username> <PO password>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APP_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PO_TOP%\admin\sql\pockrvdt.sql \
    <PO username> <PO password>
```

View the following files in \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out (NT):

```
po_headers_all.lst
po_headers_archive_all.lst
po_releases_all.lst
po_releases_archive_all.lst
```

Each file displays the format (also called data type) of the REVISED_DATE column and a list of your dates in the affected table. In each file, check that the *data type* of REVISED_DATE is Date and verify the dates themselves. Contact Oracle Support if you identify any problems.

Step 6: Verify RMA upgrade (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Applications Specialist (Purchasing) / System Administration
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Receiving

Complete this step if you used return material authorizations (RMAs) in your previous release to authorize and receive customers returns using Oracle Order Entry and Oracle Inventory. If you are using Order Management for the first time, this step does not apply.

In Release 11i, you receive returns from customers in Purchasing rather than in Inventory. During the upgrade, all completed and pending receipt transactions created against customer returns in your previous release are transferred automatically from Inventory to Purchasing. The upgrade also transfers all expected customer returns so that they are visible in the Find Expected Receipts window in Purchasing.

Example:

Before the upgrade (in Inventory), every RMA line that you can receive against Inventory has a corresponding row in the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table. For example, the table might contain this receipt information for RMA 6357:

RMA_INTERFACE_ID	RMA_NUMBER	QUANTITY (on RMA line)	RECEIVED_ QUANTITY	DELIVERED_ QUANTITY	I
270	6357	10	7	6	N

The I in the last column stands for Inspection. In this example, it is N for No inspection required.

For every row, there are multiple rows in the MTL_SO_RMA_RECEIPTS table that reflect all transactions performed against that RMA line. In Inventory, this table shows the following received and accepted quantities for the RMA 6357 example:

RECEIVED_QUANTITY	ACCEPTED_QUANTITY	Transaction
10	10	Received and delivered to inventory.
-5	-5	Returned to customer from inventory
1	1	Received and delivered to inventory
2	0	Received (into inspection) but not yet delivered
-1	0	Returned to customer from receiving (inspection)

RMA 6357 has 10 items. Of this total, 7 were received, 6 of those 7 were delivered, 1 of the 7 is still on the receiving dock, and the remaining 3 of the original 10 are still to be received.

After the upgrade (in Purchasing), the following receiving transactions are created:

- A single receipt for a quantity of 13 (total received quantity = 10 + 1 + 2)

- A deliver transaction for 10 against this receipt
- A Return to Customer transaction (returned from inventory) for 5 against this delivery
- Another deliver transaction for 1 against this receipt
- A Return to Customer transaction (returned from receiving) for 1 against this receipt

The upgrade creates a receiving supply of 1 for the 1 item still on the receiving dock. In Purchasing, you can deliver, return, or inspect this item. The upgrade also creates 3 expected receipts for the 3 not yet received. These receipts are available in the Find Expected Receipts window in Purchasing.

Review upgraded transactions:

Check the following tables (automatically generated during the upgrade) to verify that transactions were processed successfully.

RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS table:

This table lists transactions that were process successfully. It contains the following information:

- CREATION_DATE (DATE)
- RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2)
- RMA_INTERFACE_ID NUMBER
- SHIPMENT_HEADER_ID (NUMBER) — Shipment header identifier of the transaction generated in the Purchasing receiving tables

RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table:

This table lists transactions that were not upgraded due to errors. The upgrade logs the error and continues to transfer the RMA receipt data from Inventory to Purchasing.

Note: If the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table or the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_SUCCESS table already exists (for example, if you re-ran the upgrade), the upgrade script assumes it is being re-run and processes only transactions with errors from the RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS table.

It contains the following information:

- **CREATION_DATE (DATE)** — Date the record was created
- **RUN_MODE (VARCHAR2)** — Indicator of whether the error was logged the first time the upgrade occurred (FIRST-RUN) or the subsequent time the upgrade occurred (RE-RUN)
- **RMA_INTERFACE_ID (NUMBER)** — Internal unique interface identifier from the MTL_SO_RMA_INTERFACE table
- **ERR_NUMBER (NUMBER)**
- **ERR_MESSAGE (VARCHAR2)**

Fix any errors:

Fix errors listed in RCV_RMA_UPGRADE_ERRORS, and re-run the RMA upgrade script. You can ignore errors involving data that is old or obsolete.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PO_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvmaup.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PO_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @rcvmaup.sql
```

Public Sector Product Family

Perform the following Category 5 tasks to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Oracle Labor Distribution Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Upgrade Labor Distribution and remove obsolete objects (required)	Application Specialist

Step 1: Upgrade Labor Distribution and remove obsolete objects (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0** Performed by: **Application Specialist**

Reference manual: **No** Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Labor Distribution**

Requires concurrent manager: **Yes**

To upgrade Oracle Labor Distribution:

Run pspup115.sql. Note the following information about the script:

- If the script is successful, you can run it only once. If the script fails, it can be run multiple times until it succeeds.
- The script prompts for user confirmation before starting.
- You can exit by entering [CTRL C].

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PSP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pspup115.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PSP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pspup115.sql
```

The script records the results on the screen and in a log file (pspup115.lst). If you find errors, fix the problem and restart the script. The upgrade continues from the point where it registered the error. Repeat this step until there are no errors listed.

To remove obsolete objects:

Run the following SQL*Plus script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PSP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pspr mobs.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PSP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @pspr mobs.sql
```

The script records the results on the screen and in a log file (pspr mobs.lst). If you find errors, fix the problem and restart the script. Repeat this step until there are no errors listed.

Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Migrate data to new tables (required)	Technical Specialist
2. Load seed data (required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Migrate data to new tables (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 2.0, 3.3	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Federal Financials

Migrate the data used by running the appropriate version of the following script and checking the log file for errors:

Version 2.0:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupditv.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdfch.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupditv.sql
C:\> sqlplus<APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdfch.sql
```

Version 3.3:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FV_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupgpsa.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupditv.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdfch.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FV_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupgpsa.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupditv.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @fvupdfch.sql
```

Review the results in fvupgpsa.log.

Step 2: Load seed data (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 2.0, 3.3**Performed by: Application Specialist**

Reference manual: Oracle U.S. Federal Financials User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: Federal Financials**

Execute the Load Federal Financials Seed Data concurrent request to load the federal payment formats, lookups in Payables and Receivables, and federal-specific General Ledger sources and categories. For more information, see Chapter 8, Federal Seed Data Setup.

Category 6 — Before Using Product Features

This chapter describes the Category 6 steps — users can sign on to the product, but they cannot use a particular feature until you complete the appropriate steps. The feature(s) affected are listed in the summary lines following each step.

- System Administration Tasks 6-2
- Application Object Library Tasks 6-4
- Oracle Alert Tasks 6-8
- Oracle Common Modules Tasks 6-9
- Oracle Cash Management Tasks 6-10
- Oracle General Ledger Tasks 6-11
- Oracle Payables Tasks 6-18
- Oracle Projects Tasks 6-22
- Oracle Receivables Tasks 6-23
- Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks 6-24
- Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks 6-30
- Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks 6-32
- Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks 6-41
- Oracle Human Resources Tasks 6-42
- Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks 6-44
- Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks 6-45

- Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks 6-48
- Public Sector Budgeting Tasks, 6-48
- Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks 6-52

Applications Technology Products

Perform the upgrade steps for System Administration and Application Object Library before you perform product-specific steps.

System Administration Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Set up report security groups (recommended)	System Administrator
2. Upgrade accounting calendar (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Set up report security groups (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Reports

Oracle Applications uses Standard Report Submission to launch most reports. You can create report security groups to provide access to only those reports that each responsibility needs. The All Reports standard security group lists all reports.

Additional Information: Organizing Programs into Request Groups, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Alternatively, you can create custom report security groups to provide access to custom reports only for a specific responsibility. For example, to add customized reports for Receivables, you would enter them in the Receivables All request security group through the Submit Requests window.

Step 2: Upgrade accounting calendar (conditionally required)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Technical Specialist**Reference manual: **No**Do before anyone uses: **Accounting Calendar**

If you set up your accounting calendar for any Oracle Applications product in a previous release and you wish to use the same accounting calendar(s) for a newly installed product(s), you must copy your calendar information for each new product. The following table lists products that use the accounting calendar.

Oracle Applications Product	Product ID
Global Accounting Engine (AX)	600
Oracle Alert (ALR)	160
Oracle Assets (FA)	140
Oracle Bills of Material (BOM)	702
Oracle Financials for Europe (JE)	7002
Oracle General Ledger (GL)	101
Oracle Human Resources (PER)	800
Oracle Inventory (INV)	401
Oracle Order Entry (OE)*	300
Oracle Payables (AP)	200
Oracle Projects (PA)	275
Oracle Purchasing (PO)	201
Oracle Receivables (AR)	222
Oracle Sales Compensation (CN)*	283

* Order Entry and Sales Compensation also use the accounting calendar.

To upgrade your accounting calendar, complete the following steps:

1. Copy your calendar information. You can find the exact name of your set of books by moving to the Define window.

2. Run glips.sql, using the following variables.

When SQL*Plus prompts for...	do this...
NEW_PRODUCT_ID	Enter the value for your new product. For example, for Oracle Payables enter 200, for Oracle Purchasing enter 201.
INSTALLED_PRODUCT_ID	Enter the value 101 to copy the Oracle General Ledger accounting calendar.
SET_OF_BOOKS_NAME	Enter the full name of the set of books using the accounting calendar. For example, Fremont Manufacturing.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glips.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @glips.sql
```

3. Repeat these steps for each new Oracle Applications product that will use an existing accounting calendar.

Application Object Library Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Update custom code using flexfield values in FND_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Update custom calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Rename the srw directory to reports for custom applications (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Copy custom forms libraries to AU_TOP (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. Copy custom .fmb files to AU_TOP (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. Convert character-mode messages to GUI for custom applications (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
<input type="checkbox"/>	7. Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Update custom code using flexfield values in FND_LOOKUPS (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**Performed by: **Technical Specialist**Reference manual: **No**Do before anyone uses: **Custom Flexfields-related code**

Oracle Applications has replaced lowercase flexfield-related lookup codes in FND_LOOKUPS (and in the related flexfields columns in AOL tables) with new uppercase codes. These changes are applied automatically during the upgrade process. If you have customizations that use these lookup codes (from FND_LOOKUPS or from the flexfield tables directly), you need to change your customizations to use these new values.

The following table shows the LOOKUP_TYPE used in FND_LOOKUPS, the corresponding flexfields table and columns that use the changed value, the old lookup value used in FND_LOOKUPS and the flexfield table, and the new value. Evaluate your custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) to assess whether it uses these values and modify it accordingly.

Lookup Type	Table Name	Column	Old Value	New Value
FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	FND_FLEX_VALIDATION_EVENTS	EVENT_CODE	e	O
FIELD_TYPE	FND_FLEX_VALUE_SETS	FORMAT_TYPE	t	I
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_ID_FLEX_SEGMENTS	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A
FLEX_DEFAULT_TYPE	FND_DESCR_FLEX_COLUMN_USAGES	DEFAULT_TYPE	s	A

Step 2: Update custom calls to FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**Performed by: **Technical Specialist**Reference manual: **Oracle Application Object Library
Technical Reference Manual**Do before anyone uses: **Custom
flexfields-related code**

In Release 11, Oracle Applications added a NAME column to the FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL table to aid in the translation of context field values for descriptive flexfields. AutoUpgrade populates this column based on the codes in FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT. You will need to modify any custom code (scripts, APIs, reports, and so on) that accesses FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT_TL or FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT to account for this new column and its values.

Step 3: Rename the srw directory to reports for custom applications (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Technical Specialist / System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Your custom application

Because of the change in reports products used in Oracle Applications, you should change the name of the srw directory to reports for each custom application.

Step 4: Copy custom forms libraries to AU_TOP (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Custom applications

Copy your custom forms libraries (.pll) to the resource directory under AU_TOP. You must complete this step before you regenerate custom forms.

Step 5: Copy custom .fmb files to AU_TOP (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Custom applications

Put copies of your custom .fmb files in the \$AU_TOP/forms/<language> (UNIX) or %AU_TOP%\forms\<language> (NT). Keep the original copies of your forms \$COMMON_TOP/forms/<language> (UNIX) or %COMMON_TOP%\forms\<language> (NT) because files in AU_TOP may be overwritten during the upgrade.

Step 6: Convert character-mode messages to GUI for custom applications (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	Do this before anyone uses: Custom applications

If you defined custom Message Dictionary messages using a custom application name in the character-mode Define Messages form (because your character-mode custom applications use Message Dictionary), you must convert them to GUI format to continue using messages.

The FNDMDCVT program copies all of the messages for the application in the FND_MESSAGES table, concatenates the extended message text on the message text, and removes the special formatting codes in the old messages to produce plain text. It then inserts the new messages into the FND_NEW_MESSAGES table. If a

message with that name, language, and application already exists in the FND_NEW_MESSAGES table, the insert fails and the previously existing row is left alone. Only U.S. language messages are transferred by this converter.

To convert your messages, follow these steps:

1. Make sure that FND_TOP/bin is in your path, and run the FNDMDCVT program from the operating system prompt:

For UNIX users:

```
$ FNDMDCVT <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <APPL_SHORT_NAME>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> FNDMDCVT <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <APPL_SHORT_NAME>
```

where <APPL_SHORT_NAME> is the application short name for which you want messages converted. Run this script once for each custom application.

2. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to Application > Messages. Query the messages for your application and verify that they were converted successfully. Adjust special formatting, as necessary. For example, old formatting text that was incorrectly entered should be deleted.
3. To generate the Message Dictionary runtime message file, run FNDMDGEN for each custom application. From the operating system prompt, type:

For UNIX users:

```
$ FNDMDGEN <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <LANG_SHORT_NAME> \  
  <APPL_SHORT_NAME> DB_TO_RUNTIME
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> FNDMDGEN <APPS username>/<APPS password> 0 Y <LANG_SHORT_NAME> \  
  <APPL_SHORT_NAME> DB_TO_RUNTIME
```

where LANG_SHORT_NAME is the language short name (such as US) and APPL_SHORT_NAME is the application short name for which you want the message file generated.

Step 7: Regenerate, recompile, and re-link custom concurrent program libraries (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**

Performed by: **Technical Specialist**

Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	Do this before anyone uses: Custom concurrent program libraries
---	--

To accommodate new construction of concurrent program libraries, you must regenerate, recompile, and re-link your customized concurrent program libraries.

1. From the Application Developer responsibility, navigate to the Concurrent Program Libraries form (Concurrent > Library).
2. Query your custom library and press Generate.

This submits a concurrent request that will create a file named <libraryname>.c in the lib directory under the application product tree to which the program library belongs. For example, library CUSTLIBR, a custom program (CUSTLIBR.c) registered under application Custom Application with a basepath XXCST_TOP, will be generated in the lib directory under XXCST_TOP.

3. Compile the file using \$FND_TOP/usrxit/Makefile (UNIX) or %FND_TOP%\usrxit\Makefile (NT) and relink using adrelink.

Additional Information: Concurrent Programs, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

4. Place the executable in the /bin directory for the appropriate product.

Additional Information: *Oracle Applications Developer's Guide*

Oracle Alert Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Associate organization names with custom Alert definitions (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Re-create event alert triggers (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Associate organization names with custom Alert definitions (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (Alert)
Reference manual: Oracle Alert User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Alert definition

If you have custom alerts defined that you want to assign to a particular organization, you must manually update the alert.

1. As the Alerts Manager, navigate to the Alerts form (Alert > Define) and query the definition.
2. Choose Alert Details, then display the Installations alternative region in the Alert Details window.
3. Enter the ORACLE ID and organization name that you want to run this alert against.
4. Make sure you check Enabled before you save your changes.

Step 2: Re-create event alert triggers (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Custom Alerts

Re-create custom alerts dropped in Category 3, Step 1.

Oracle Common Modules Tasks

Checklist		Performed by
<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Restore and back up custom data for non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Restore and back up custom data for non-Global Demo databases (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10SC Production 16 (or higher), 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Custom Common Modules features

During the upgrade process, custom AK data is automatically downloaded and placed in the following files: akcatr.jlt, akcobj.jlt, akcreg.jlt, akcflow.jlt, and akcsec.jlt. They are located in \$APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out (NT). Use AKLOAD to restore the data. Before you do, be sure to set up your Java environment correctly (for example, make sure your CLASSPATH is set correctly).

1. Run the AKLOAD upload command by typing the following:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<SID>/out
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<SID>\out
```

Then enter the following commands:

```
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcattr.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcobj.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcreg.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcflow.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
jre oracle.apps.ak.akload <APPS username> <APPS password> THIN "(DESCRIPTION=(ADDRESS=(PROTOCOL=tcp) \
(HOST=<hostname>)(PORT=<port#>))(CONNECT_DATA=(SID=<$ORACLE_SID>)))" UPLOAD akcsec.jlt NOUPDATE $NLS_LANG
```

2. Back up output files.

Make a backup copy of akcattr.jlt, akcobj.jlt, akcreg.jlt, akcflow.jlt, and akcsec.jlt. These files contain the only record of your customized AK data.

Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 6 tasks to upgrade the products in the Financials product family.

Oracle Cash Management Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Reinstall custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist

Step 1: Reinstall custom Reconciliation Open Interface objects (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Technical Specialist
Reference manual: Financials Open Interface Reference, Oracle Cash Management User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Reconciliation Open Interface

This step is required only if you have implemented and customized the Reconciliation Open Interface.

In Category 1, Step 1, you backed up your customized copies of CE_999_INTERFACE_V (view), and CE_999_PKG (package). Reinstall these customized copies to your database in your APPS account.

Oracle General Ledger Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program (required)	Application Specialist (GL)
2. Ensure that account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)	Technical Specialist
3. Review period rates (conditionally required)	Database Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
4. Define Owners' Equity Translation Rule profile option (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
5. Define Income Statement Accounts Revaluation profile option (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
6. Review AutoPost criteria (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
7. Define GIS conversion rates and rate types (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
8. Verify program submission parameters for mass funds check/reservation (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (GL)
9. Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions (recommended)	System Administrator / Application Specialist (GL)
10. Define Daily Rates profile option (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)
11. Set up intercompany balancing (recommended)	Application Specialist (GL)

Step 1: Preserve GL account combinations affected by the Segment Value Inheritance program (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Segment Value Inheritance program**

You can automatically replicate any changes you make to segment value attributes, such as Detailed Posting, Detailed Budgeting, Effective Date Ranges, and the Enabled flag, to all account combinations that contain that segment value by running the Segment Value Inheritance program. For example, if you disable a

particular cost center in your chart of accounts, you can also require that all account combinations that contain that cost center be automatically disabled.

To protect specific account combinations from being affected by this program, follow these steps:

- 1. In the GL Accounts window (Setup > Accounts > Combinations), find the account combinations that you want to preserve.
- 2. Select the Preserved check box for all combinations that you want to save.
- 3. Save your work.

Step 2: Ensure that account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Summary Accounts, Financial Analyzer Integration

Attention: This step is *required* if you use summary accounts in General Ledger *and* use Oracle Financial Analyzer to analyze your General Ledger account information. This step is *highly recommended* if you use summary accounts but not Financial Analyzer.

In Release 10.7 (and earlier), the natural account type for summary accounts was automatically set to Owners' Equity. In Release 11 and 11*i*, summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value. As a result, you must ensure that all the account segment values—even parent values—have the correct account type. Otherwise, your summary accounts will be incorrectly classified.

For example, if you define a parent account value, 1999, that is the total of all your asset accounts, the account type for the parent segment value 1999 should be set to Asset. When you subsequently define a summary account using this segment value, the summary account will be correctly defined as an asset.

Note: If the parent segment value is T, account type is not meaningful and does not need to be changed. If you use dependent account segments and have difficulty completing this step, contact Oracle Support.

Correctly setting the account type for your account segment values ensures that your summary balances are displayed correctly if you choose to perform additional analysis using Oracle Financial Analyzer. To ensure that account segment values use the correct account type, complete the following steps. The last step propagates the changes you made to Oracle General Ledger.

1. In the Key Flexfields Segments window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Key > Segments), unfreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.
2. In the Value Sets window (Setup > Financials > Flexfields > Validation Sets), query the value set Name for your natural account segment. Optionally, query the segment values that you use for your summary accounts. When you have entered your query values, choose Find. The Segment Values window appears.
3. Choose Hierarchy, Qualifiers from the pop list.
4. For each account segment value you use in your summary accounts, open the Segment Qualifiers window and review the setting for Account Type.
5. If the account type is wrong, change it.
6. When you have reviewed and changed your account types, save your work.
7. Use the Key Flexfields Segments window to refreeze all account structures that reference your account segment.
8. Run the following SQL*Plus script to propagate the changes you made in Oracle Applications to Oracle General Ledger:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GL_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GL_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gluacsum.sql
```

Step 3: Review period rates (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7 or 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (GL)**

Reference manual: **Oracle General Ledger User's Guide**, Do before anyone uses: **Period Rates**
Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide

Attention: You do not need to perform this step if you have applied the mini-packs for Release 11.02 or 11.03.

Run the Maintain Euro Period Rates program for each set of books that satisfies *both* of the following criteria:

- The set of book’s functional currency is the euro or a currency participating in the Economic and Monetary Union, or period rates have been entered between the set of book’s functional currency and the euro.
- The period containing January 1, 1999 is open or future enterable for that set of books, or the budget year containing January 1, 1999 is open for a budget in that set of books.

Run the program from the General Ledger responsibility for a specific set of books.

1. Navigate to Reports > Request > Standard.
2. Choose to submit a single request.
3. Select Program - Maintain Euro Period Rates and click Submit.

**Step 4: Define Owners’ Equity Translation Rule profile option
(conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL) / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User’s Guide , Do before anyone uses: Translation Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User’s Guide	

For additional information, see: Appendix B > Setting General Ledger Profile Options, and Multi-Currency > Notes on Translating Owner’s Equity Accounts, *Oracle General Ledger User’s Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User’s Guide*.

**Step 5: Define Income Statement Accounts Revaluation profile option
(conditionally required)**

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL) / System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User’s Guide , Do before anyone uses: Revaluation Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User’s Guide	

For additional information, see: Appendix B > Setting General Ledger Profile Options, and Multi-Currency > Revaluing Balances, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*.

Step 6: Review AutoPost criteria (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide , Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: AutoPost
--	--

Attention: Perform this step only if you have previously defined and used AutoPost criteria in Release 10.7.

You use AutoPost criteria to automatically post journal batches that have specific combinations of journal source, period, and account type. In previous releases, you could define only one set of criteria for AutoPost, and you had to redefine it in order to change the priorities of the set of components.

You can now define multiple AutoPost criteria per set of books. You can then schedule AutoPost to run at different times and submission intervals for each criteria set you have defined.

During the upgrade, AutoPost criteria you have defined are grouped in a criteria set (called Standard) for each set of books. After you review your AutoPost criteria, you can submit and schedule your AutoPost runs using the Submit Request window. You will need to provide the Criteria Set name as a run parameter.

Additional Information: Posting Journal Batches Automatically in
Oracle General Ledger User's Guide or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 7: Define GIS conversion rates and rate types (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide , Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Global Intercompany System (GIS)
--	--

In earlier releases, GIS subsidiaries were able to use period rates or daily rates when transferring foreign currency journals. With Release 11i, GIS subsidiaries use only daily rates. Therefore, you must specify conversion rate types and daily conversion rates for each of your subsidiaries.

To define conversion rate types:

- 1. In the Conversion Rate Types window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Types), enter a Name and Description for the new conversion rate type.
- 2. Save your work.

To define conversion rates:

- 1. In the Daily Rates window (Setup > Currencies > Rates > Daily), enter the From Currency — the currency you want to convert from using the rates you enter. General Ledger automatically displays the functional currency for your set of books as the To Currency — the currency you want to convert to.
- 2. Enter the Conversion Date and Type.
- 3. Enter the conversion rate to convert your From Currency amounts to your To Currency amounts and save your work.

Note: Set the profile option Daily Rates Window: Enforce Inverse Relationship During Entry to Yes to have the rates displayed in both columns to show the inverse relationship.

Step 8: Verify program submission parameters for mass funds check/reservation (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL)
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Mass Funds Check/Reservation program

Attention: Perform this step if you previously used the Mass Approvals program in Release 10.7. Note that Mass Approvals has been renamed in Release 11*i* to Mass Funds Check/Reservation.

You use the Mass Funds Check/Reservation program to check or reserve funds for unposted journal batches. In Release 10.7, GL used your Automatic Posting options to prioritize the funds check and reservation. You must now specify the AutoPost criteria set as a parameter when you run Mass Funds Check/Reservation. If you have used Standard Request Submission to set the program to run at specific

intervals, cancel your existing Standard Request Submission, and create a new one. Enter new program parameters and specify an appropriate AutoPost criteria set.

Additional Information: Running the Mass Funds Check/Reservation Program, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* or *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*

Step 9: Set function security for journal posting and reversing functions (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: System Administrator/Application Specialist (GL)
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Enter Journals

In Release 10.7, function security for journal posting in the Enter Journals and Encumbrances windows was enabled with the profile option Journals: Allow Posting During Journal Entry.

You must now use the Oracle Applications standard Function Security features in System Administration to restrict user access to journal posting and reversing functions. If you do not specifically exclude the functions Enter Journals: Post and Enter Journals: Reverse from selected responsibilities, all users will have access to these functions.

Additional Information: Overview of Function Security, *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Step 10: Define Daily Rates profile option (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL) / System Administration
Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide, Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Entering Daily Rates

For more information, see: Appendix B > Setting General Ledger Profile Options, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* and *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*.

Step 11: Set up intercompany balancing (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 or 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (GL)
--	--

Reference manual: Oracle General Ledger User's Guide , Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Intercompany Balancing
--	--

If you designed your Release 11.0 and earlier account structure with an additional segment that uses your Balancing Segment value set, you have a one-time opportunity to assign the Intercompany segment qualifier to this segment.

For additional information, see: Accounting for Multiple Companies Using a Single Set of Books, Setting Up General Ledger > Designing Your Accounting Flexfield, Setting Up General Ledger > Defining Intercompany Accounts, *Oracle General Ledger User's Guide* and *Oracle Public Sector General Ledger User's Guide*.

Oracle Payables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Set up Offset taxes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
2. Set up the future-dated payment account (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
3. Set up recoverable taxes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Payables)
4. Link GL records and AP records (required)	Application Specialist (Payables)

Step 1: Set up Offset taxes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
--	--

Reference manual: Tax Codes (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Payables Offset Taxes
---	--

Perform this step only if your previous installation had default Offset taxes set at the supplier site. After the upgrade, Offset taxes no longer default to new distributions unless you perform this step.

The default Offset tax is now associated with a Sales or User-defined tax. During the upgrade, if a supplier site had a default Offset tax assigned to it, AutoUpgrade automatically enables the new Use Offset Taxes check box at the supplier site. This means when you enter a tax code with an active associated Offset Tax code, Payables automatically creates an Offset tax distribution.

Run apofftax.sql to create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade report. It lists for each organization all combinations of defaults for tax code and Offset tax code that you have set at the supplier site level and each supplier site that uses a combination.

Review the report to determine where to assign active Offset taxes to active Tax Codes. You may need to duplicate and rename a tax code if it is paired with more than one Offset tax. For example, supplier site A has Tax1 and Offset Tax1 set as defaults, and supplier site B has Tax1 and Offset Tax2 set as defaults. You need to duplicate and rename Tax1 so you can assign Offset Tax 2 to it, and then assign the new tax to supplier site B.

1. Create the Offset Tax Code Upgrade report:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apofftax.sql
```

2. Review the report and identify any tax codes you need to duplicate and rename, or identify the Offset taxes you need to associate with tax codes.
3. Navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Taxes > Tax Codes).
4. If you had Sales or User-defined tax codes associated with more than one Offset tax, then duplicate and rename them.
5. Query each Sales or User-defined tax code that you want to associate with an Offset tax code.
6. In the Offset Tax field, enter an active Offset tax code and save your work.
7. Update supplier sites that had tax code defaults associated with more than one Offset tax. Navigate to each supplier site (Suppliers > Entry). Choose the Sites button). Change the default tax code to the duplicated and renamed tax code.
8. Save your work.

Step 2: Set up the future-dated payment account (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Future Dated Payments (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Payables Future Dated Payments

Perform this step only if you want to use future-dated payments in Release 11i.

Payables added fields for the future dated payment account in the Financials Options, Suppliers (only if you do not use Multi-org), Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts windows. It also renamed the field in the Payment Documents window. Perform this step to populate the new future dated payment account fields.

If you used future dated payments in your previous release, the upgrade does the following for each payment document:

- Defaults the account you had defined in the Cash Clearing field of the Payment Documents window to the Future Dated Payment (account) field in the Payment Documents window
- Sets the Future Date Use option to Allowed in the Payment Documents window

In the Payables Options window, specify whether you want to use the supplier site or payment document account when Payables accounts for Future Dated Payments. If no value is set, this parameter is automatically set to Payment Document during the upgrade.

To populate the new fields:

1. In the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials), for each organization, enter a value for the Future Dated Payment (account) and save your work.
2. Run the following script to populate the Future Dated Payment account field for Suppliers, Supplier Sites, and Bank Accounts. The script updates all organizations. It prompts for a batch size for the commit cycle.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apxfdp01.sql
```

3. Reset any values for Future Dated Payment account in the Supplies, Supplier Sites, Bank Accounts, and Payment Document windows and save your work. See *Oracle Payables User's Guide* for more information.

Step 3: Set up recoverable taxes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Application Specialist (Payables)**

Reference manual: Financials Options, Recoverable Tax (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Recoverable Tax (in either Payables or Purchasing)
---	--

This step is necessary *only* for those operating units in which you have set the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option to Yes (Category 2, Step 3). Refer to *Oracle Payables User's Guide* for details, but at a minimum, do the following.

1. For each operating unit in which the Enable Recoverable Tax Financials option is set to Yes, navigate to the Financials Options window (Setup > Options > Financials). In the Tax tabbed region, enter a value in the Default Recovery Rate field. For example, if you want taxes to be 100% recoverable, enter 100. You can override this value when you set up your tax codes.
2. To set up or review tax code recoverability, navigate to the Tax Codes window (Setup > Tax > Codes). Review the recovery rate of each tax code and ensure that it is set correctly. For example, if you want a tax to be 100% recoverable, set the recovery rate to 100. If you want a tax to be non-recoverable (such as for U.S. state and local taxes), set the recovery rate to 0.
3. Save your work.

Step 4: Link GL records and AP records (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Accounting (Oracle Payables User's Guide)	Do before anyone uses: Drill down functionality from GL to Payables

When GL records and AP records are linked, you can drill down from GL journals to the applicable invoice or payment document through the corresponding subledger accounting entries in Payables.

To link the records, run `apallink.sql`. The script takes two parameters: Start Date and End Date. It updates all accounting entry lines for invoices and checks in that date range. You can run it multiple times, for example, in small date ranges to manage your system resources. We recommend you begin with the most recent data and work backwards until the entire pre-Release 11i date range has been updated. Although you cannot drill down between records that have been updated and those that have not, having non-updated records does not affect other functions, such as data entry.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username> / <APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @apallink.sql
```

Remember to enter the dates in DD/MM/YYYY format.

Oracle Projects Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Implement Self-Service Time (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)
2. Implement cross charge (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Projects)

Step 1: Implement Self-Service Time (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide, Release 11i	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Self-Service Time

Perform this step if you used Personal Time and Expense (PTE) in Releases 10.7 or 11, or Project Time and Expense to enter timecard information in Releases 10.7 or 11.0.

To enter timecard information, you must implement Self-Service Time and roll it out to your users. Refer to *Oracle Self-Service Time Implementation/Migration Guide Release 11i* on *OracleMetaLink* for details.

Step 2: Implement cross charge (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Projects)
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Cross Charge

Cross charging and Borrowed and Lent Accounting are no longer enabled by way of profile options. If you cross-charged transactions across Operating Units or used the Borrowed and Lent Revenue function before the upgrade, follow the Cross Charge and Inter-Project Billing implementation instructions in the *Oracle Projects User's Guide* to continue using this function.

Oracle Receivables Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes (conditionally required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)
2. Link GL and AR records (required)	Application Specialist (Receivables)

Step 1: Define GL tax assignments for Natural Account tax codes (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)
Reference manual: Oracle Receivables Tax Manual	Do before anyone uses: AutoInvoice or Transactions window

If you want to use the Account Method for Value Added Tax (VAT) compliance, you can set up Receivables to use the tax code assigned to the Natural Account segment of your Revenue account when you manually enter transactions or import them using AutoInvoice.

Additional Information: Controlling Tax from your Revenue Account and Implementing Value Added Tax, *Oracle Receivables Tax Manual*.

Note: You do not need to perform this step if you have already completed it as part of your Oracle Payables or Oracle General Ledger upgrade. *If you use multiple sets of books, you need to perform this step for each organization.*

Step 2: Link GL and AR records (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Receivables)
Reference manual: Oracle Receivables User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Drill down functionality from GL to Receivables

When GL records and Receivables records are linked, you can drill down from GL journals to the applicable invoice or payment document through the corresponding subledger accounting entries in Receivables.

To link the records, you run three scripts.

- `argicind.sql`. This script creates an index on the `gl_import_references` table that enhances the performance of `ar115gic.sql`. It may take a long time to run, depending on the volume of data in `gl_import_references`.
- `ar115gic.sql`. The script takes one parameter, `number of Bulk_fetch_rows`. It then fetches and updates that number of rows at one time. A commit is issued once for every bulk fetch, so you should set the rollback segment size accordingly. You can run this script multiple times if necessary.

Important: Enter the fetch size according to the volume of the AR data in the `gl_import_references` table. If you leave this parameter blank, the default is 10,000.

- `ar115gic.sql`. This script drops the index created by `argicind.sql`.

To link GL records and AR records, run these scripts in the order listed:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AR_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argicind.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115gic.sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argidind.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AR_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argicind.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @ar115gic.sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @argidind.sql
```

Country-specific Financials Product Family

Perform the following Category 6 tasks to upgrade the products in the Country-specific Financials product family.

Oracle Financials for Asia/Pacific Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Enter uniform numbers for your company – Taiwan (required)	Taiwan
2. Enter GST registration information – Singapore (required)	Singapore
3. Update tax types (recommended)	Singapore

Checklist	Perform for this country...
4. Modify existing globalization flexfields in Payables (required)	Thailand
5. Update Thai Payables tax codes (required)	Thailand
6. Update Thai Payables globalization flexfield attributes (required)	Thailand
7. Modify the attribute set for the Thai Output Tax Summary report (recommended)	Thailand

Step 1: Enter uniform numbers for your company – Taiwan (required)

Perform for this country: Taiwan	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Product Manager	Do before anyone uses: Government uniform invoice
Reference manual: Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

In Category 2, Step 5, you recorded uniform numbers (taxpayer IDs) for your company. Enter these numbers in the Taxpayer ID field in the Locations window (Human Resources) as part of defining additional company information.

Additional Information: Additional Company Information, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 2: Enter GST registration information – Singapore (required)

Perform for this country: Singapore	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: Product Manager	Do before anyone uses: GST Reporting
Reference manual: Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

To enter GST registration information, first use the Locations window to enter additional information for a location, then define the location as a legal entity and enter the GST registration number in the Organization window. To complete this step, from the Singaporean AR responsibility, navigate to Setup > System > Organizations/Locations.

Additional Information: Additional Company Information, *Oracle Financials Common Country Features User's Guide*

Step 3: Update tax types (recommended)

Perform for this country: Singapore	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator/Manager (Payables and Receivables)	Do before anyone uses: GST reporting
Reference manual: Oracle Payables User's Guide and Oracle Receivables User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

To see historic transactions in the Singaporean GST F5 report, update the tax types for the historical transactions. Then, set up new tax types that correspond to the historical tax categories in the Payables and Receivables Lookups window and update the tax types associated with these transactions.

1. Run `jasgupg1.sql` to check the tax categories/tax types used in Singapore Payables and Receivables for all organizations.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

Review the `jasgupg1.lst` output file (in the current working directory). If no rows are listed, no further action is required.

2. In the Payables Lookups (Singaporean Payables > Oracle Payables > Setup > Lookups > Payables) and Receivables Lookups (Singaporean AR > Setup > System > QuickCodes > Receivables) windows, define new tax types that correspond to the tax categories that you associated with your tax codes in Release 11.

Additional Information: Lookups, *Oracle Payables User's Guide*; Defining Receivables Lookups, *Oracle Receivables User's Guide*.

Note: The Singaporean GST F5 report prefixes Payables tax types with the tax class associated with the tax code. Tax classes are new, and can be either input or output. The report lists transactions grouped by tax class and tax type. You do not need to include INPUT or OUTPUT in the lookup codes that you define for your new tax types. For example, if you had the tax category INPUT-STANDARD in Release 11, define the corresponding Payables tax type in Release 11i with the lookup code STANDARD.

3. Run `jasgupg2.sql` to update tax type fields in both Payables and Receivables Tax Codes windows for the tax codes that were associated with the tax category value in the globalization flexfield. This script updates all tax categories.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg2.sql
```

At the prompt, specify the new tax type for each tax category. The script does not update the tax type if you do not specify a value for the tax type parameter. Enter a value, or leave blank and press Return.

For example:

```
Updating Tax Category INPUT-STANDARD
Tax Type:
```

If you enter STANDARD for the Tax Type, the script checks if the tax type STANDARD is defined as a lookup code for the lookup type Tax Type in the Payables Lookups window. It updates the tax type field with the new tax type for all records that were saved with tax category INPUT-STANDARD.

4. Run `jasgupg1.sql` to list the tax categories/tax types after the update:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JA_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username> /<APPS password> @jasgupg1.sql
```

Step 4: Modify existing globalization flexfields in Payables (required)

Perform for this country: Thailand	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist (Thai Payables and Receivables)	Do before anyone uses: Thai Input Tax Summary Report, Thai Output Tax Summary Report
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

Download and apply patch 1561962 to modify your existing globalization flexfields in Payables. This patch is available on Oracle *MetaLink*.

Step 5: Update Thai Payables tax codes (required)

Perform for this country: Thailand	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist (Thai Payables)	Do before anyone uses: Thai Input Tax Summary Report
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

This release provides a globalization flexfield in the Tax Codes window that lets you indicate when you want Payables to add tax invoice information to a transaction. If you want to enter tax information when you enter invoices, select Invoices from the list of values. If you want to enter tax information when you enter payments, select Payments. Update this globalization flexfield for every VAT tax code in your old system.

To update tax codes, query your existing tax codes and complete the steps in Setting Up Payables for the Thai VAT in the *Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide*.

Step 6: Update Thai Payables globalization flexfield attributes (required)

Perform for this country: Thailand	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Thai Input Tax Summary Report
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide, Oracle Applications Product Update Notes	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

In this release, globalization flexfield attributes that contain tax invoice information were modified. Run `jathpupg.sql` to update these attributes:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JA_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jathpupg.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd $JA_TOP/patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jathpupg.sql
```

Step 7: Modify the attribute set for the Thai Output Tax Summary report (recommended)

Perform for this country: Thailand	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Application Specialist (Thai Receivables)	Do before anyone uses: Thai Output Tax Summary Report
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Thailand User's Guide, Oracle Financials RXi Reports Administration Tool User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

To print historical data with the Thai Output Tax Summary report, create a new attribute set and run the report using this new set.

To create a new attribute set:

1. In the Report eXchange Designer responsibility, create a new attribute set for the RX-only: Thai Output Tax Summary Report as described in the *Oracle Financials RXi Reports Administration Tool User Guide*.
2. In the Register Columns window, select the Include in Attribute Set check box for GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT2 (Tax Invoice Date in previous release) and for GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT3 (Tax Invoice Num in previous release).
3. Click OK.
4. Navigate to the Displayed Columns tabbed region in the Attribute Set window and move GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT2 and GDF_RA_CUST_TRX_ATT3 from the Available window to the Displayed window.
5. Navigate to the Column Details window and modify the report column header name in the Attribute Name column for these two attributes.

To run a report with the new attribute set:

1. In the System Administrator responsibility, navigate to the Concurrent Programs window.

- 2. Query the Thai Output Tax Summary Report.
- 3. Select the Parameters button. The Concurrent Program Parameters window appears.
- 4. Select the Display check box to display the new attribute set and save your work.

Oracle Financials Common Countries Features Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Set up Appreciation QuickCode (recommended)	Austria, Germany, Switzerland
2. Upgrade Appreciation transactions (recommended)	Austria, Germany, Switzerland
3. Assign request groups to your responsibilities (recommended)	Oracle Financials Users in Japan

Step 1: Set up Appreciation QuickCode (recommended)

Perform for this country: Austria, Germany, and Switzerland	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator and Application Specialist	Do before anyone uses: DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report
Reference manual: Oracle Assets User's Guide	

The DACH Asset Summary report and DACH Depreciation Analysis report display appreciation separately from other types of unplanned depreciation. To distinguish between appreciation amounts when you run these reports, you must use the APPREC QuickCode for the unplanned depreciation type.

From the Oracle Assets responsibility use the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes) to maintain unplanned depreciation types. Query the TYPE FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type and specify APPREC in the Value field to set up a new unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. In addition, you should disable any other unplanned depreciation types that were previously used to record appreciation.

Step 2: Upgrade Appreciation transactions (recommended)

Perform for this country: Austria, Germany, and Switzerland	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator / Application Specialist	Do before anyone uses: DACH Asset Summary report or DACH Depreciation Analysis report

Appreciation transactions that were previously entered using a different unplanned depreciation type are not shown correctly in the DACH Asset Summary report or the DACH Depreciation Analysis report. Run the `jgzzfaap.sql` script to specify the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used.

After you run the script, you should only use the APPREC QuickCode as the unplanned depreciation type for appreciation transactions. Manually disable the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used for appreciations.

To run `jgzzfaap.sql`, type:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JG_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JG_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jgzzfaap.sql <type>
```

where `<type>` is the unplanned depreciation type that was previously used. You should consult an Oracle Assets user to see which unplanned depreciation type, if any, was previously used to record appreciation transactions.

From the Oracle Assets responsibility, maintain unplanned depreciation types in the QuickCodes window (Setup > Asset System > QuickCodes). To see possible values for unplanned depreciation types, query the TYPE FOR UNPLANNED DEPRECIATION QuickCode type.

For example, run this script to convert transactions with the OLDTYPE unplanned depreciation type to the APPREC QuickCode. The script updates the TRANSACTION_SUBTYPE column in FA_TRANSACTION_HEADERS:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus scott/tiger @jgzzfaap.sql OLDTYPE
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus scott/tiger @jgzzfaap.sql OLDTYPE
```

Additional Information: Unplanned Depreciation, *Oracle Assets User's Guide*

Step 3: Assign request groups to your responsibilities (recommended)

Perform for this country: Japan	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: System Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Reports
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide	

Assign the request groups listed in the following table to the responsibilities to access these reports. Perform this step in the Standard Request Submission window from the System Administrator responsibility (Security > Responsibility > Define).

Customer Balances Detail	Customer Balances Detail (180)
Customer Balances Summary	Publish Tax Reconciliation by Taxable Account
Supplier Balances Detail	Supplier Balances Detail (180)
Supplier Balances Summary	Subledger Balance Maintenance for Payables Accounting Periods
Subledger Balance Maintenance for Receivables Accounting Periods	

New Japan request groups are as follows:

Assign this request group...	To your...
JGJP + AP Reports	Payables responsibilities
JGJP + AR Reports	Receivables responsibilities
JGJP + GL Reports	General Ledger responsibilities

In the Responsibilities window, navigate to the Request Group region and use the list of values in the Name field to assign request groups to your responsibilities.

Oracle Financials for Europe Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers (conditionally required)	Poland, Turkey
2. Update Spanish globalization flexfield contexts (conditionally required)	Spain
3. Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield (conditionally required)	Denmark
4. Recreate French income tax types (conditionally required)	France
5. Update French deductible VAT invoices (conditionally required)	France

Checklist	Perform for this country...
6. Update Italian VAT transactions (conditionally required)	Italy
7. Create Italian inventory tax types (conditionally required)	Italy
8. Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices (required)	Italy
9. Update Hungarian VAT transactions (conditionally required)	Hungary
10. Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield (conditionally required)	Hungary
11. Enable the Tax Code field in the Receipts window (conditionally required)	Germany

Step 1: Update Polish and Turkish journal line sequence numbers (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Poland, Turkey** Perform if upgrading from: **11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator** Do before anyone uses: **General Ledger for Poland or Turkey**

In Release 11, the journal line sequence numbers were stored in a descriptive flexfield (JG_ZZ_RECON_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11i, the journal line sequence numbers are stored in a globalization flexfield (JG_GL_JE_LINES_INFO) in the same window. After the upgrade, update the journal line sequence numbers to use the new flexfield.

1. As System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System) and set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for your GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations). Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Poland* for Polish GL Localizations or to *Turkey* for Turkish GL Localizations. Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for your responsibility.
2. From the GL Localizations responsibility (Polish GL Localizations or Turkish GL Localizations), run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission windows.

Note: If you use multiple sets of books, run the Journal Lines Global Descriptive Flexfield Synchronization program once for each set of books.

Additional Information: *Oracle Financials for Poland User’s Guide;*
Oracle Financials for Turkey User’s Guide

Step 2: Update Spanish globalization flexfield contexts (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Spain	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Spain

Oracle Financials for Spain uses new contexts for these globalization flexfields:

Globalization Flexfield	Table	Window
JG_AP_INVOICES	AP_INVOICES_ALL	Invoices
JG_RA_CUSTOMER_TRX	RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_ALL	Transactions
JG_HR_LOCATIONS	HR_LOCATIONS_ALL	Location

To properly access your existing country-specific data after the upgrade, you must update the globalization flexfield contexts by running this script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeesgdfm.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeesgdfm.sql
```

Step 3: Update Danish EFT invoices to use EDI flexfield (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Denmark	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Product Manager (Financials for Denmark)	Do before anyone uses: Danish EDI
Reference manual: Oracle Payables User’s Guide, Oracle Financials for Denmark User’s Guide	

In Release 11*i*, Oracle Financials for Denmark replaces the Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) payment process (from Release 10.7 and 11) with Electronic Data Interchange (EDI). You must run jedkediu.sql to migrate the additional country-specific invoice information for your outstanding invoices from the Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfield to the Release 11*i* globalization flexfield for EDI.

Before you run jedkedi.sql:

1. Update additional invoice information for all open invoices with a payment method of Electronic.

When you run jedkedi.sql, the additional country-specific invoice information for your outstanding invoices is migrated from the Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfield to the Release 11i globalization flexfield for EDI. Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information. You must update the additional invoice information in Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfields for all open invoices that you want to upgrade with a payment method of Electronic.

Additional Information: Invoice EFT Information, *Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*

2. Create a new hold code for the data migration script.

You must also create a new hold code for the data migration script to use when placing the holds. From the Invoice Approvals window (Danish AP > Setup > Invoice > Approvals), enter EFT_TO_EDI_DATA_MIGRATE in the Name field for the new hold code. In the Type field, select Invoice Hold Reason. You should also check the Postable and Releaseable check for this hold code.

Additional Information: Invoice Approvals, *Oracle Payables User's Guide*

To run jedkedi.sql:

3. Move additional country-specific invoice information.

To move the additional invoice information for your outstanding invoices from the Release 10.7 or 11 EFT flexfield to the Release 11i flexfield, run this script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkedi.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedkedi.sql
```

Oracle Payables for Denmark places a hold on any invoice with incomplete information using the hold code you previously defined.

After you run jedkediu.sql:

4. Enter missing information for invoices placed on hold.

After you run jedkediu.sql, you must enter any missing information for invoices that were placed on hold with the Danish data migration hold code. For instructions on entering additional country-specific invoice information for EDI, refer to Entering Invoices, *Oracle Financials for Denmark User's Guide*. When the information is complete, you can manually release the holds and approve the invoices for payment.

Step 4: Recreate French income tax types (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: France	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for France

If you used Oracle Financials for France before the upgrade, you must recreate the French income tax types that were removed as a part of the upgrade process. Run this script to recreate the income tax types:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrtxtp.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrtxtp.sql
```

Step 5: Update French deductible VAT invoices (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: France	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: French Deductible VAT Declaration Report

In Release 11i, the French Deductible VAT Declaration report uses deduction tax rules, rather than tax types, to select invoices for inclusion. When you enter new invoices, you associate a deduction tax rule with an invoice using the Deduction Tax Rule field in the globalization flexfield at invoice header level in the Invoices window.

To include invoices that you entered before the upgrade in the French Deductible VAT Declaration report after the upgrade, you must associate a deduction tax rule

with those invoices by running a script. The script updates the Deduction Tax Rule field for invoices with these tax types: CRE/M, CRE/M-1, DEB/M, and DEB/M-1.

Run this script to update your deductible VAT invoices:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrapdv.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jefrapdv.sql
```

Additional Information: *Oracle Financials for France User's Guide*

Step 6: Update Italian VAT transactions (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: **Italy** Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Italian Purchase VAT Register, Italian Payables Sales VAT Register, Italian Payables Summary VAT Report, Italian Receivables Sales VAT Register, Italian Receivables Deferred VAT Register
---	--

In Release 11i, Oracle Financials for Italy uses a new method to mark VAT transactions that were already reported on a final version of these VAT reports:

Italian Purchase VAT Register	Italian Payables Sales VAT Register
Italian Payables Summary VAT Report	Italian Receivables Sales VAT Register
Italian Receivables Deferred VAT Register	

You must update the VAT transactions that were included on final VAT reports before the upgrade, to prevent these transactions from being included the next time you print these reports after the upgrade.

Run this script to update your VAT transactions:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitrvat.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitrvat.sql
```

The script marks the transactions as reported by inserting a record for every transaction against each register into the new table JE_IT_VAT_REPORT_INV.

Additional Information: *Oracle Financials for Italy User's Guide*

Step 7: Create Italian inventory tax types (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Italy	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 character mode
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Italy

If you used Oracle Financials for Italy before the upgrade, you must create additional tax types. Run this script to create the inventory tax types:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitmtlt.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitmtlt.sql
```

Step 8: Update taxable amounts for custom bills and self invoices (required)

Perform for this country: Italy	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator/Application Specialist	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Payables Summary VAT Report, Italian Purchase VAT Report, Italian Payables Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT)

In Release 11i, you use the globalization flexfield in the Distributions window to record the taxable amounts for self invoices and custom bills. Self invoices and custom bills entered before the upgrade are not displayed on the Italian Payables Summary VAT Report, the Italian Purchase VAT Register, and the Italian Sales VAT Register (Self Invoice, EU VAT).

To ensure that the VAT reports correctly display these amounts, run jeitapid.sql. It updates invoice distributions that have a tax type of Custom Bill or Self Invoice by updating the GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE_CATEGORY and GLOBAL_ATTRIBUTE1 at the invoice distribution level (on the ap_invoice_distributions table).

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jeitapid.sql
```

Enter the Set of Books ID for your Italian organization at the prompt. If you have multiple Italian organizations, run the script once for each organization.

Additional Information: *Oracle Financials for Italy User's Guide*

Step 9: Update Hungarian VAT transactions (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Hungary	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Hungarian Purchases VAT Register or Hungarian Sales VAT Register

In Release 11i, Oracle Financials for Hungary uses a new method to mark VAT transactions that were already reported on a final version of these VAT reports:

- Hungarian Purchases VAT Register
- Hungarian Sales VAT Register

You must update the VAT transactions that were included on final VAT reports before the upgrade, so that the transactions are included on reprints of those final VAT reports after the upgrade. Run this script to update your VAT transactions:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvap.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jehurvap.sql
```

The script updates the transactions by inserting additional information into the global attribute columns on the AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS table for Payables transactions or the RA_CUSTOMER_TRX_LINES table for Receivables transactions.

Additional Information: *Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide*

Step 10: Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Hungary	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0
--	--

Performed by: System Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Hungary User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: No

In Release 11i, Oracle Financials for Hungary provides the Hungarian Receivables Open Items Revaluation report, which revalues all outstanding receivables accounts at a particular date, with regard to a stated reporting period, to reflect foreign exchange rate fluctuations since the original transaction date.

In Hungary, not all transaction types of open items are revalued. You designate whether specific transaction types should be revalued in the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield on the Transaction Types window (Hungarian AR: Setup > Transactions > Transaction Types).

Enable the Additional Information for Hungary globalization flexfield by setting these profile options in the System Profile Values window (System Administrator: Profile > System):

Set this profile option...	To this value...
JG: Application	Oracle Receivables
JG: Product	European Localizations
JG: Territory	Hungary

Now, use the Revalue Transaction Type field in this flexfield to manually designate which transaction types should be revalued.

Step 11: Enable the Tax Code field in the Receipts window (conditionally required)

Perform for this country: Germany	Perform if upgrading from: 10.7 character mode
Performed by: Database Administrator	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financials for Germany

If you used Oracle Financials for Germany before the upgrade, you must enable the Tax Code field in the Receipts window. Run this script to enable the Tax Code field:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $JE_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @jedetcfe.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %JE_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username> /<APPS password> @jedetcfe.sql
```

Oracle Financials for the Americas Tasks

Checklist	Perform for this country...
1. Update Colombian journal line third-party information (required)	Colombia

Step 1: Update Colombian journal line third-party information (required)

Perform for this country: Colombia	Perform if upgrading from: 11.0
Performed by: Database Administrator/ Application Specialist (General Ledger)	Users must log off: No
Reference manual: Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide	Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes

In Release 11, Oracle Financials for Colombia stores journal line third-party information in a descriptive flexfield (JG_ZZ_RECON_LINES) in the Journals window. In Release 11*i*, this information is stored in a globalization flexfield (JG_GL_JE_LINES_INFO) in the same window. After the upgrade, update your journal line third-party information to use the new flexfield:

1. As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window (Profile > System).
2. Set the JG: Territory and GL Set of Books ID profile options at responsibility level for your Colombian GL Localizations responsibility. Set the JG: Territory profile option to *Colombia*. Set the GL Set of Books profile option to the appropriate set of books for your responsibility.
3. From the Colombian GL responsibility, run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program using the Standard Request Submission window (Colombian Localization > Other > Requests > Run).

Note: If you use the multiple sets of books architecture (MSOBA) for your territory, you must run the journal lines global descriptive flexfield synchronization program once for each set of books using a different responsibility.

Additional Information: Entering Journal Line Third Party
Information, *Oracle Financials for Colombia User's Guide*

HRMS Product Family

Perform the following Category 6 tasks to upgrade the products in the HRMS product family.

Oracle Human Resources Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Recreate custom Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)	System Administrator
2. Drop obsolete Oracle users (recommended)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Recreate custom Salary Proposal view (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Salary Administration

You identified the custom location for the custom Salary proposals view script (PER_SALARY_PROPOSALS_HRV) in Category 1, Step 3. After your custom changes have been applied, rerun the script to recreate the customized view:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $PER_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %PER_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @peupl01v.sql
```

Step 2: Drop obsolete Oracle users (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Restricted Security Profiles

If you used restricted security profiles in Release 10.7, these profiles might now be obsolete. In Release 11i, responsibilities that use restricted security profiles connect to the APPS Oracle user. You no longer have to maintain separate Oracle users for

every restricted security profile. Your Release 10.7 reporting Oracle users are unaffected by this change.

To list Oracle users that were associated with restricted security profiles in Release 10.7, use the following script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP/admin/sql/peoldsec.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your \$ORACLE_SID or \$TWO_TASK.

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PER_TOP%\admin\sql\peoldsec.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

This script also indicates which of these Oracle users have been dropped from the database. The output is spooled to a file called peoldsec.lst in your current working directory. If the Oracle users listed in peoldsec.lst do not contain the custom tables or views that you want to preserve, you should drop them — they are no longer used by Oracle HRMS.

Before dropping a user whose schema contains objects, thoroughly investigate these objects and the implications of dropping them. Pay attention to any cascading effects. For example, if the user owns a table, check whether any views or procedures depend on that table. For example:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus SYSTEM/<SYSTEM password>
SQL> DROP USER jones;
SQL> exit
```

To drop a user and all its schema objects (if any), you must have the DROP USER system privilege. Because this privilege is so powerful, a security administrator is typically the only type of user to have it. You can drop a user from a database using either the Drop menu item of Enterprise Manager/GUI, or the SQL command DROP USER.

If the user’s schema contains any schema objects, use the CASCADE option to drop the user and all associated objects and foreign keys that depend on the tables of the user. If you do not specify CASCADE and the user’s schema contains objects, an error message is returned and the user is not dropped.

To verify that your obsolete Oracle users have been successfully dropped, rerun peoldsec.sql at any time prior to dropping PER_SECURITY_PROFILES_OLD.

Additional Information: *Oracle8 Server Administrator’s Guide*

Oracle Payroll (U.S.) Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Check for invalid U.S. address information (conditionally required)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Check for invalid U.S. address information (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: No	Do before anyone: Runs a payroll or modifies existing employee tax information

The Global Legislation driver (hrglobal.drv) creates a file (pyvaladr.lst) that lists existing U.S. addresses (locations or personal addresses) that are invalid. It is located in \$APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out (UNIX) or %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out (NT). Review this file and correct invalid address data.

To correct location addresses you must:

1. In the Location window (Work Structures > Location), query the required location and amend the address as required.
2. Save your work.

To correct personal addresses you must:

1. In the People window (People > Enter and Maintain), query the required person and choose the Address button and amend the address as required.
2. Save your work.

After correcting the data, regenerate the .lst file to check that all addresses are now valid. To regenerate the file:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PAY_TOP/admin/sql/pyvaladr.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your \$ORACLE_SID or \$TWO_TASK.

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PAY_TOP%\admin\sql\pyvaladr.sql
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

Manufacturing and Distribution Product Family

Perform the following Category 6 tasks to upgrade the products in the Manufacturing and Distribution product family. Because Oracle Inventory, Oracle Cost Management, and Oracle Work in Process are closely related, the steps for these products are included under one heading.

Oracle Inventory/Cost Management/Work in Process Tasks

Checklist	Menu Responsibility>function
1. Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV (recommended)	N/A
2. Define Item Catalog Description profile option - INV (required)	System Administrator
3. Update item descriptions - INV (conditionally required)	N/A

Step 1: Create indexes on flexfield segment columns - INV (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **No**

Do before anyone uses: **Indicated key flexfields**

To improve performance of your key flexfields, create indexes on the segment columns. We recommend creating these indexes for the following key flexfields:

Flexfield	Base Table
System Items	MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
Account Aliases	MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS
Stock Locators	MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS

1. Determine whether a concatenated index exists for the flexfield segments by running the following script and substituting `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B` for `<Base Tablename>`:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @invflseg.sql <Base Tablename>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password> @invflseg.sql <Base Tablename>
```

This statement prints the index name, the name of the indexed column, and the position of the column in the index. If a single index includes all of your segment columns that are enabled for the System Items flexfield, then you already have a concatenated index for the System Items flexfield.

2. If you have segment3, segment4, segment6 (in this order) enabled for your flexfield, and you determine that a concatenated index does not already exist for these columns, create an index for each one on the `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B` table, using the SQL*Plus statement:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_N3
  2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
  3 (segment3,
  4  segment4,
  5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <INV username>/<INV password>
SQL> create index MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_N3
  2 on MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B
  3 (segment3,
  4  segment4,
  5  segment6);
SQL> exit
```

Name your index using the format `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_NX`, where `X` is the first active segment column. Choose a different `X` if this index name already exists. In the example, your index name is `MTL_SYSTEM_ITEMS_B_N3`.

- Repeat the previous steps to create indexes for MTL_GENERIC_DISPOSITIONS and MTL_ITEM_LOCATIONS.

Step 2: Define Item Catalog Description profile option - INV (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Inventory) / System Administrator
--	--

Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Items
-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

You can build an item catalog description by either concatenating the item catalog group *name* with the enabled descriptive element values or by concatenating the item catalog group *description* with the enabled descriptive element values

The profile option INV:Use catalog name item description determines the method used. *Yes* uses the catalog group name. *No* uses the catalog group description.

You can set the profile option at the site, application, responsibility, or user level:

- As the System Administrator, navigate to the System Profile Values window.
- Query for INV:Use catalog name item description. Set the value and save your work.

Additional Information: Profile Options in Oracle Inventory,
Oracle Inventory User's Guide

Step 3: Update item descriptions - INV (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist (Inventory)
--	---

Reference manual: No	Do before anyone uses: Items
-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

If you choose to build item descriptions from catalog group descriptions and enabled descriptive element values, you can use the following script to update all existing descriptions for items that have an assigned catalog group:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $INV_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %INV_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @invicgds.sql
```

Additional Information: Overview of Item Cataloging, *Oracle Inventory User's Guide*

Public Sector Product Family

Perform the following Category 6 tasks to upgrade the products in the Public Sector product family.

Oracle Grants Accounting Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Drop obsolete tables (optional)	DBA or System Administrator

Step 1: Drop obsolete tables (optional)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: DBA or System Administrator
Reference manual: No	User must log off this application: No
Requires concurrent manager: No	

Run the following script to drop obsolete tables and temporary tables used by the upgrade process. This script should only be run after all issues with the Grants Accounting upgrade process are resolved.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $GMS_TOP/patch/115/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsuppos.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %GMS_TOP%\patch\115\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @gmsuppos.sql
```

Public Sector Budgeting Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Ensure account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)	Application Specialist

Checklist	Performed by
2. Convert dates stored in character columns into canonical format (required)	Database Administrator
3. Convert real numbers stored in character columns into multiradix format (required)	Database Administrator
4. Create baseline budgets from historical worksheets for use in budget revisions for line items and positions (required)	Application Specialist
5. Enable Excel interface functionality (conditionally required)	System Administrator
6. Enable Oracle Financial Analyzer (conditionally required)	System Administrator

Step 1: Ensure account segment values use correct account type (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7**

Performed by: **Application Specialist**

Reference manual: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**

Perform this step only if account types were changed in General Ledger.

Ensure that the account types for summary accounts are correctly updated for historical worksheets. In Release 10.7, the account types for summary accounts were automatically set to Owner's Equity. In Release 11 and Release 11i, the summary accounts inherit the account type of their account segment value.

Run the following script to propagate the changes made to General Ledger:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSB_TOP/upgrade/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUACSM.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSB_TOP%\upgrade\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUACSM.sql
```

Step 2: Convert dates stored in character columns into canonical format (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**

Performed by: **Database Administrator**

Reference manual: **Oracle Applications Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide**

Do before anyone uses: **Oracle Public Sector Budgeting**

Run the following script to propagate the changes:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSB_TOP/upgrade/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUDATE.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSB_TOP%\upgrade\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUDATE.sql
```

Step 3: Convert real numbers stored in character columns into multiradix format (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Public Sector Budgeting

Run the following script to propagate the changes:

From the UNIX prompt:

```
$ cd $PSB_TOP/upgrade/sql
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUNUMB.sql
```

From the NT prompt:

```
C:\> cd %PSB_TOP%\upgrade\sql
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @PSBUNUMB.sql
```

Step 4: Create baseline budgets from historical worksheets for use in budget revisions for line items and positions (required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Application Specialist
Reference manual: Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Public Sector Budgeting
Requires Concurrent Manager: Yes	

Release 10.7 users must define a GL Budget Set. Once GL Budget Sets are available, run the concurrent program Create Adopted Budget to create a baseline budget for budget revision line items. Then, you run the concurrent program Upload Worksheet to Position Control to create a baseline budget for budget revision positions.

Step 5: Enable Excel interface functionality (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Budgeting with Excel worksheets

Perform this step only if you will import data from Excel worksheets.

Oracle Public Sector Budgeting provides an interface to transfer data between Public Sector Budgeting and Excel. It enables you to modify line item and position worksheets in a spreadsheet. Follow these steps to enable this Excel interface.

1. Download the Public Sector Budgeting Excel integration patch from *Oracle MetaLink*.
2. Unzip psbconn.zip. It contains two files: PSBVEXCL.xla and PSBVEXCL.xls.
The PSBVEXCL.xla file is an executable that enables the Excel interface. The PSBVEXCL.xls file is the source file for PSBVEXCL.xla. Use the source file only if you must change the source code.
3. Move PSBVEXCL.xla and PSBVEXCL.xls to a temporary directory that is accessible to the System Administrator. As System Administrator, copy PSBVEXCL.xla to every client machine that will use the Excel interface.

Additional Information: Chapter 49, Using Spreadsheets with Public Sector Budgeting Procedures, *Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide*

Step 6: Enable Oracle Financial Analyzer (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Financial Analyzer

Perform this step only if you will use Public Sector Budgeting with Oracle Financial Analyzer.

Oracle Public Sector Budgeting uses the online analytical processing capabilities of Oracle Financial Analyzer (based on the Express multidimensional database) to support comprehensive analysis and planning. In Express Server, using Administrator or the command prompt, perform the following tasks.

1. Create a new database named PSBCODE.DB as described in the *Oracle Express Database Administration Guide*.

2. Download the Public Sector Budgeting Oracle Financial Analyzer integration patch from *OracleMetaLink*.
3. Unzip psbtools.zip. It contains the following file: PSBCODE.eif.
4. Import all objects in PSBCODE.eif as described in the *Oracle Express Database Administration Guide* and save the database.
5. Move PSBCODE.DB to the Super Administrator's code component directory.
6. On the Financial Analyzer installation system, open ofacdcf.cfg in the Super Administrator's code component directory.
7. Set OFALCNAME to PSBCODE. Save and close ofacdcf.cfg.
8. Create an entry for the Oracle database using SQL*Net8 Easy Config so that Financial Analyzer can connect to the Oracle database.
9. Configure Financial Analyzer for use with Public Sector Budgeting as described in Chapter 50, Financial Analyzer and Public Sector Budgeting Procedures, *Oracle Public Sector Budgeting User's Guide*.

Oracle U.S. Federal Financials Tasks

Checklist	Performed by
1. Reset profile options (conditionally required)	Application Specialist Payables
2. Set up holiday and non-working days (required)	Application Specialist General Ledger

Step 1: Reset profile options (conditionally required)

Perform if upgrading from: 2.0, 3.3	Performed by: Application Specialist (Payables)
Reference manual: Oracle U.S. Federal Financials User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Payment Reason Code

Profile options now contain a list of values. If you use payment reason code functionality, reset the following profile options to use the list of values:

- Use Interest Reason Codes
- Use Discount Lost Reason Codes

Additional Information: Step 6, Chapter 2, *Oracle U.S. Federal Financials User's Guide*

Step 2: Set up holiday and non-working days (required)

Perform if upgrading from: **2.0**Performed by: **Application Specialist (General Ledger)**Reference manual: **Oracle U.S. Federal Financials User's Guide**Do before anyone uses: **Additional sets of books**

During the upgrade process, the holiday and non-working day data was applied only to the lowest set of books ID. Any additional sets of books were not associated with the calendar. If multiple sets of books were defined, the holiday and non-working days data must be redefined for each additional set of books.

Additional Information: Step 12, Chapter 7, *Oracle U.S. Federal Financials User's Guide*

Finishing Your Upgrade

This chapter describes the tasks that you need to perform to finish your upgrade. Because these steps affect your Oracle Applications as a whole, they must be performed after all system and product-specific steps are complete. If you perform them out of this order, you may reverse some of the upgrade processes that you have completed in various other steps.

This chapter contains the following sections:

- System Maintenance Upgrade Tasks
- Required Finishing Tasks
- Start Oracle Applications
- Optional Finishing Tasks

System Maintenance Upgrade Tasks

After you have completed and verified your upgrade, you should complete the steps in this section to perform "clean-up" tasks such as dropping unneeded database objects. Note also that some of these steps must be performed for all Applications, not just those that are licensed installed or shared, since all database components are installed and upgraded together.

Attention: Before you perform any of the steps in this chapter, your system administrator should back up the Oracle Applications product files. On a server or stand-alone machine, your database administrator should also back up the Oracle Applications database.

<input type="checkbox"/>	1. Drop unneeded database objects (recommended)	Database Administrator
<input type="checkbox"/>	2. Install online help (recommended)	Database Administrator
<input type="checkbox"/>	3. Delete obsolete product files (recommended)	System Administrator
<input type="checkbox"/>	4. Recompile flexfields (recommended)	Database Administrator
<input type="checkbox"/>	5. Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets (recommended)	Database Administrator
<input type="checkbox"/>	6. Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables (recommended)	Database Administrator

Step 1: Drop unneeded database objects (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual	Users must log off: No

Some Oracle Applications products may contain obsolete database objects. To help you remove these objects, we supply a SQL*Plus script for each of these products. The script is \$ <PROD_TOP>/admin /sql /<prod>dold.sql (UNIX) or %<PROD>_TOP%\admin\sql\<prod>dold.sql> (NT), where <PROD> (and <prod>) represent the product short name. For example, PO (Purchasing) or JE (Financials for Europe).

Warning: Do not run <prod>dold.sql until you have verified that AutoUpgrade has run successfully to completion, and that your upgrade was successful.

Each script lists the obsolete objects. Check to see if there is a script for your product. If so, look in the script and determine whether you want to drop the obsolete objects. If you do, enter the following command:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $APPL_TOP/admin/<dbname>/out
```

where <dbname> is the value of your \$ORACLE_SID or \$TWO_TASK.

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %APPL_TOP%\admin\<dbname>\out
```

where <dbname> is the value of your ORACLE_SID or LOCAL.

Run the script for your product. For example, to run the Purchasing script:

For UNIX users:

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @$PO_TOP/admin/podold.sql \  
<PO username> <PO password>
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @%PO_TOP%\admin\sql\podold.sql \  
<PO username> <PO password>
```

Note: To drop obsolete objects for Oracle Financials Common Country Features (JG), you run jgdold.sql as described. However, the script requires the following parameters: <GL username> <GL password> <JG username> <JG password> <AR username> <AR password> <FA username> <FA password>

Step 2. Install online help (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: No	

Release 11i contains two versions of Oracle Applications online help — Commercial and Public Sector. If you want to install help text, you need to apply the database driver for the Commercial version (dbcom.drv) first, and then apply the driver for the Public Sector version (dbgov.drv), if appropriate. Both drivers are located in \$FND_TOP/admin/driver (UNIX or %FND_TOP%\admin\driver (NT).

Note: If you have customized your help files, you must recreate these customizations after you have loaded the new online help system. You cannot reapply Release 10.7 or 11.0 customizations to the Release 11i files. See the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide* for more details.

Additional Information: AutoPatch, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

See *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* for information about installing online help translations.

Step 3: Delete obsolete product files (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: System Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual, Oracle Applications Concepts	Users must log off: No
Requires Concurrent Manager: No	

You can delete the product files for the previous release of Oracle Applications (if you have not done so already). For each product, you may want to retain report output files or customized programs. Output files are stored in the old log and output subdirectories under each product's top directory, or under the log and output directories you created, or under a common directory.

To remove the obsolete files for an old release, change to the top directory of the old release and enter the following command:

For UNIX users:

```
$ rm -rf <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
$ rm -rf /d01/appl/r10
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> del /s /q <old APPL_TOP>
```

Here is an example:

```
C:\> del /s /q \APPL110
```

Note: If you are upgrading from 10.7SC, you can delete all obsolete client-side product files at this time.

Step 4: Recompile flexfields (recommended)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Database Administrator**Reference manual: **Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide**Users must log off: **Yes**

The first time you access a flexfield in your newly upgraded products, the flexfields will automatically be recompiled. However, to avoid performance issues associated with this process, you may want to use AD Administration to recompile your flexfields at a time convenient for your users. To recompile flexfields, choose option 4 (Compile flexfield data in AOL tables) from the menu.

Step 5: Drop obsolete columns in Oracle Assets (recommended)Perform if upgrading from: **10.7, 11.0**Performed by: **Database Administrator**Reference manual: **Oracle 8i SQL Reference Manual**Users must log off: **Yes**

In order to conform to multilingual changes in Oracle Assets, a number of tables have been renamed to indicate they are base tables (_B) and their descriptive columns have been copied to a new table with the same base name, plus a _TL suffix to indicate they are translated tables. The column in the base table has been set to unused, so you will not be able to view the column. To drop obsolete columns, run facoldr.sql as follows. The script requires BATCHSIZE as a parameter.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $FA_TOP/admin/sql
```

```
$ sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @facoldr.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %FA_TOP%\admin\sql
```

```
C:\> sqlplus <APPS username>/<APPS password> @facoldr.sql
```

The following table lists the columns that will be dropped by facoldr.sql.

Table name in prior release	Base table with dropped column	Translated with copied column	Column name to be dropped
FA_ADDITIONS	FA_ADDITIONS_B	FA_ADDITIONS_TL	description
FA_CATEGORIES	FA_CATEGORIES_B	FA_CATEGORIES_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	description
FA_LOOKUPS	FA_LOOKUPS_B	FA_LOOKUPS_TL	meaning
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	description

Table name in prior release	Base table with dropped column	Translated with copied column	Column name to be dropped
FA_LOOKUP_TYPES	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_B	FA_LOOKUP_TYPES_TL	meaning
FA_RX_ATTRSETS	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_B	FA_RX_ATTRSETS_TL	user_attribute_set
FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_B	FA_RX_REP_COLUMNS_TL	attribute_name

To make sure the data in the column to be dropped has been copied correctly from the base table to the translated table, confirm that there is an equal number of rows in both tables. You can do this by running a select count from SQL*Plus from the base table and the translated table. Also, you can select the column name in the translated table of the column that will be dropped from the base table to make sure there is data in that column. For example, the upgrade drops the Description column from the FA_ADDITIONS_B table. Select Description and confirm that the column has been correctly populated.

Step 6: Drop unnecessary indexes for Oracle Payables (recommended)

Perform if upgrading from: 10.7, 11.0	Performed by: Database Administrator
Reference manual: Oracle Payables User's Guide	Do before anyone uses: Oracle Applications

If you use Accrual Basis Accounting, move to the admin directory and run the following script to drop the indexes on the CASH_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS.

Attention: Do not perform this step if you use Combined Basis Accounting.

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apaccr.sql
```

If you use Cash Basis Accounting, move to the upgrade directory and run the following script to drop the indexes on the ACCRUAL_POSTED_FLAG columns in AP_INVOICE_DISTRIBUTIONS and AP_INVOICE_PAYMENTS:

For UNIX users:

```
$ cd $AP_TOP/admin/sql
$ sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> cd %AP_TOP%\admin\sql
C:\> sqlplus <AP username>/<AP password> @apcash.sql
```

Required Finishing Tasks

After you complete the upgrade steps in this chapter, you need to perform some additional steps to finish your upgrade.

Implement Product and Country-specific Functionality

There may be additional product-specific implementation or setup tasks you need to complete realize the functionality built into Release 11i— for both newly licensed products and those that may have new functionality in this release. Before you use your upgraded Oracle Applications products, refer to the implementation guide or implementation section of the user's guide associated with the Oracle Applications products you currently use, or plan to use, and follow the instructions.

Review Installation Log Files

Rapid Install creates several log files during the installation. They are located in admin/install (admin\install on NT) in the COMMON_TOP directory, in the directory containing your Rapid Install configuration file, and in the Oracle Universal Installer inventory log directory. If there are problems with your installation, Oracle Support may ask for information contained in these files.

Review Server Process Control Scripts

Rapid Install configures and starts server processes during installation. It also stores a script for each process in admin/scripts on UNIX (or in admin\scripts on NT) of your COMMON_TOP directory. You can use these scripts at any time after your installation to stop and start these processes manually.

Script	UNIX name	NT Name	Owner
Forms Server Listener	adfrmctl.sh	adfrmctl.cmd	applmgr user
Forms Metrics Server	adfmsctl.sh	adfmsctl.cmd	applmgr user

Script	UNIX name	NT Name	Owner
Forms Metrics Client	adfmctl.sh	adfmctl.cmd	applmgr user
Report Review Agent	adalnctl.sh	adalnctl.cmd	applmgr user
Reports Server	adrepctl.sh	adrepctl.cmd	applmgr user
TCF SocketServer	adtcctl.sh	adtcctl.cmd	applmgr user
Concurrent Managers	adcmctl.sh	adcmctl.cmd	applmgr user
*Net8 Listener for Oracle8i Enterprise Edition	addlnctl.sh	addlnctl.cmd	oracle user
HTTP Server	adapctl.sh	adapctl.cmd	applmgr user
*Oracle 8i database server	addbctl.sh	addbctl.cmd	oracle user
* Located in the 8.1.7 ORACLE_HOME in the appsutil/scripts subdirectory.			

Note: If you need to manually start Windows NT services, use the NT Service Control Panel. The .cmd name is shown here only to illustrate consistency across platforms.

Additional Information: *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

Verify Environment Setup Files

Rapid Install creates environment setup files that set up your Oracle8i, Oracle8-based technology stack, and Applications environments. Although Rapid Install creates many specific environment setup files, which are used by various startup scripts, you need to execute only the two described in this section.

When performing maintenance operations on Oracle Applications Release 11i, or the Oracle 8.0.6 ORACLE_HOME, you should log in as the *applmgr* user and execute APPSORA.env (UNIX) or APPSORA.cmd (NT) before using any Oracle Applications utility.

When performing maintenance operations on Oracle8i ORACLE_HOME, you should log in as the *oracle* user and execute the <SID>.env (UNIX) or <SID>.cmd (NT) file located in the Oracle8i ORACLE_HOME.

Verify that you have executed each of these scripts. For example, log in as *oracle* on your Oracle8i database server machine and run:

For UNIX Bourne shell users:

```
$ . <ORACLE_HOME>/<SID>.env
```

For NT users:

```
C:\> <ORACLE_HOME>/<SID>.cmd
```

Note: The server process control scripts (such as `adcmctl.sh`) automatically execute the appropriate environment setup file.

Suggestion: You can set up the *applmgr* and *oracle* login accounts to automatically execute the appropriate environment setup file.

Resize your Database

You need to increase the size of your production database. The increase will depend on the products you have licensed and the additional features (such as multiple languages or multiple organizations) you configure in your installation. Refer to your product-specific documentation and *Maintaining Oracle Applications*.

Change Database Passwords

The default passwords for the SYS account and SYSTEM account of the Oracle Applications database are *change_on_install* and *manager*, respectively. To maintain database security and restrict access to these accounts, change these passwords.

Note: The password for both SYS and SYSTEM in the Vision Demo is *manager*.

Additional Information: Managing User Privileges and Roles, *Oracle8i Administrator's Guide*

Back Up Oracle Applications

Your operating system administrator should back up the Oracle Applications product files, including COMMON_TOP, 8.0.6 technology components, and the iAS technology components. Your database administrator should back up the Oracle Applications database and Oracle8i home components.

Start Oracle Applications

You start Oracle Applications and access all ERP, CRM, BIS, and Self-Service Web Applications products from the Oracle Applications Personal Homepage. To begin, go to the Self-Service Web Applications login page located at the following URL:

```
http://<HTTP server hostname>.<domain name>:<HTTP port>/OA_HTML/<LANGUAGE_
CODE>/ICXINDEX.htm
```

For example:

```
http://oraapps1.oracle.com:8000/OA_HTML/US/ICXINDEX.htm
```

The system administrator should log in the first time using the sysadmin login account that is pre-configured in the Applications installation. Use the System Administrator responsibility to launch an Applications Forms session where the system administrator can complete the implementation steps.

Additional Information: Set Up the Personal Homepage Feature, Appendix F in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*

Change Applications Passwords

To maintain database security, change the default passwords for the Applications product accounts of the production and test databases. See the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide* for specific instructions.

Optional Finishing Tasks

Depending on your installation needs, you may need to perform some or all of the tasks in this section.

Set Up National Language Support (NLS)

If you have an NLS installation *and* your base language is American English, your upgrade is not complete until you have installed the NLS software for all active languages. For instructions, see Chapter 5, Finishing your Installation, in *Installing Oracle Applications*.

Note: If your base language is *not* American English, you need to perform this task before you perform any post-upgrade tasks. *If you do not install NLS in the correct sequence, you will not be able to log on to Oracle Applications after you run AutoUpgrade.*

Set Up Business Intelligence System

To set up and begin using BIS, you need to perform the tasks outlined in the *BIS Implementation Guide*.

Convert Custom Message Dictionary Functions

Remove the following Message Dictionary functions from your custom code:

Function	Action
fddgcs/fddgme	There is no longer a cascading stack or a message explanation. These functions are obsolete.
fddtoken	Replace with afdtoken. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afdtoken(/*_ text *token_name, text *token_value _/);</pre>
fddname	Replace with afdname. Takes two arguments (the fddname function takes only the message name). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afdname(/*_ text *applname, text *msg_name _/);</pre>
fddget	We strongly recommend that you convert to afdget. The new interface allows you to pass a buffer and buffer size. The old interface assumed the existence of a fixed-size global variable that is internal to the function. Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afdget(/*_ text *msg_buf, size_t buf_size _/);</pre>
fddmsg	Convert to afderror or afdshow. We strongly recommend using these functions explicitly so that you get the intended display behavior (because the new message system display is based on the function called, not on message properties). Requires fddutl.h header file. The syntax is: <pre>boolean afderror(/*_ void _/);</pre>

Additional Information: *Oracle Application Object Library Technical Reference Manual, Release 10; Oracle Applications Developer's Guide, Release 10.7 or 11*

Convert Database to Multiple Organizations (Multi-Org)

The Rapid Install Vision Demo database is enabled for Multi-Org. However, the production and test databases are not. If you want Multi-Org architecture in the production or test environments, refer to the instructions for converting to Multi-Org in *Maintaining Oracle Applications*.

Additional Information: *Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications*

Convert to Multiple Reporting Currencies (MRC)

The Rapid Install Vision Demo database is enabled for MRC. However, the production and test databases are not. If your production or test environment requires multiple reporting currencies, refer to the instructions for installing and implementing MRC in *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications*.

Note: If you plan to install MRC for your organization, you should turn on Invoker's Rights to save tablespace, reduce dual maintenance, and increase security. See *Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications* for complete information.

Understand System Administration Tasks

You should be completely familiar with the information in the *Oracle Applications System Administrator's Guide*. In addition to these references, you should always check *OracleMetaLink* for the latest product information.

Understand Oracle Applications Maintenance Tasks

You should be completely familiar with the information in *Maintaining Oracle Applications*. It contains important details about administration utilities, as well as manual maintenance tasks.

Products in This Release

This appendix contains a list of the abbreviations for Oracle Applications products arranged within their respective product family.

Product List

This manual uses product short names enclosed in angle brackets (< >) to indicate when you must supply the product's username and password. For example, <GL username>/<GL password> means you must supply the Oracle General Ledger username and password combination. By default, and unless noted, the schema name and password are the same as the application short name.

Note: This manual may not contain upgrade tasks for all products in this list. Some can be upgraded without manual steps. Others are new in this release, or are planned for a future release.

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
Applications Technology	AD	Applications DBA
	AK	Oracle Common Modules
	ALR	Oracle Alert
	AU	Applications Utilities
	AZ	Application Implementation Wizard
	FND	Application Object Library
	ICX	Self-Service Web Applications
	SHT	Shared Technology
CRM	AMS	Marketing

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	AMV	Marketing Encyclopedia System
	AS	Oracle Sales and Marketing
	ASF	Field Sales
	ASG	Gateway for Mobile Devices
	ASL	Mobile Field Sales Laptop
	ASO	Order Capture
	AST	TeleSales
	BIC	Customer Intelligence
	BIL	Sales Intelligence
	BIM	Marketing Intelligence
	BIX	Call Center Intelligence
	CCT	Telephony Manager
	CN	Oracle Sales Compensation
	CS	Oracle Service
	CSC	Customer Care
	CSD	Depot Repair
	CSF	Field Service
	CSP	Spares Management
	CSR	Scheduler
	CSS	Support
	CUA	CRL Financials - Assets
	CUE	Oracle Billing Connect
	CUF	CRL Financials
	CUI	CRL Supply Chain - Inventory
	CUN	CRL Supply Chain - NATS
	CUP	CRL Supply Chain - Purchasing
	CUS	CRL Supply Chain
	FPT	TeleBusiness for Financial Services
	IBA	iMarketing
	IBE	iStore
	IBP	iBill and Pay
	IBU	iSupport

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	IBY	iPayment
	IEB	Interaction Blending
	IEM	eMail Center
	IEO	Call Center Technology
	IES	Scripting
	IEU	Universal Work Queue
	IEX	Collections
	IPA	CRL Financials - Projects
	JTF	CRM Foundation
	ME	Maintenance, Repair, and Overhaul
	MWA	Mobile Applications
	OKC	Contracts Core
	OKR	Oracle Contracts for Rights
	OKS	Contracts Service Module
	OKX	Contracts Integration
	OZF	Funds & Budgets
	OZP	Trade Planning
	OZS	iClaims
	PV	Partner Relationship Management
	XDP	SDP Provisioning
	XNC	Sales for Communications
	XNM	Marketing for Communications
	XNP	SDP Number Portability
	XNS	Service for Communications
Financials	ABM	Activity-based Management
	AP	Oracle Accounts Payable
	AR	Oracle Accounts Receivable
	AX	Global Accounting Engine
	BSC	Balanced Scorecard
	CE	Oracle Cash Management
	EAA	SEM Exchange
	EVM	Value-based Management

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	FA	Oracle Assets
	FEM	Strategic Enterprise Management
	FII	Financial Intelligence
	FRM	Report Manager
	FV	Federal Financials
	GL/RG	Oracle General Ledger
	ITG	Oracle Internet Procurement Enterprise Connector
	PA	Oracle Projects
	PN	Property Manager
	RG	Report Generator
	XLA	Common Accounting Modules
	XTR	Treasury
Human Resources	BEN	Benefits
	DT	DateTrack
	FF	FastFormula
	GHR	Federal Human Resources
	HRI	Human Resources Intelligence
	HXT	Time and Labor
	OTA	Human Resources (Training)
DT, FF, GHR, PAY, PER, PQH, PQP in HR schema	PAY (default=HR)	Human Resources (Payroll)
	PER (default=HR)	Oracle Human Resources (Personnel)
	PQH	Public Sector HR
	PQP	Public Sector Payroll
	SSP	Oracle Statutory Sick Pay
Country-specific Financials	JA	Financials for Asia/Pacific
	JE/JG	Financials for Europe
	JG	Regional Financials
	JL	Oracle Financials for Latin America
Manufacturing / Distribution	BIS	Business Intelligence System

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
in BOM schema	BOM	Oracle Bills of Material
	CHV	Oracle Supplier Scheduling
	CRP	Oracle Capacity
	CST	Oracle Cost Management
	CZ	Oracle Configurator
	EAM	Oracle Enterprise Asset Management
	EC	Oracle e-Commerce Gateway
	ECX	Oracle XML Gateway
	ENG	Oracle Engineering
	FLM	Flow Manufacturing
	FTE	Oracle Transportation Hub
	INV	Oracle Inventory
	ISC	Supply Chain Intelligence
	MFG	Manufacturing Menu
	MRP	Master Scheduling
	MSC	Supply Chain Planning
	MSD	Demand Planning
	MSO	Constraint Based Optimization
	MSR	Oracle Risk Optimization
	OE	Order Entry
	OKE	Contracts for Projects
	ONT	Order Management
	OPI	Operations Intelligence
	PJM	Project Manufacturing
	PO	Oracle Purchasing
	POA	Purchasing Intelligence
	POM	Exchange
	QA	Quality
	QP	Advanced Pricing
	RHX	Advanced Planning Foundation
	RLA	Release Management
	RLM	Release Management

Product Family	Short Name	Product Name
	VEA	Automotive
	VEH	Automotive
	WIP	Work in Process
	WMS	Warehouse Management Systems
	WPS	Manufacturing Scheduling
	WSH	Shipping Execution (Common)
	WSM	Shop Floor Management
Process Manufacturing	GMA	Process Manufacturing Systems
	GMD	Processing Manufacturing Product Development
	GME	Process Manufacturing Process Execution
	GMF	Process Manufacturing Financials
	GMI	Process manufacturing Inventory
	GML	Process Manufacturing Logistics
	GMP	Process Manufacturing Process Planning
	GMW	Oracle Process Manufacturing Portal
	GR	Process Regulatory Management
	PMI	Process Manufacturing Intelligence
Public Sector	GMS	Grants Management
	IGC	Commitment Administration
	IGF	Student Systems Financial Aid
	IGI	Oracle International Public Sector Financials Common
	IGS	Student Systems
	IGW	Grants Proposal
	PSA	Public Sector Applications
	PSB	Public Sector Budgeting
	PSP	Labor Distribution

Getting Help

This appendix contains information about additional information or services that you may find useful as you install or upgrade Oracle Applications. It contains the following topics:

- Related Documents
- Oracle Customer Service
- EMM Advantage

This manual, and any other documentation associated with this release, was current as of the time it was published and released. However, we make enhancements to Oracle Applications products and respond to user needs on a continuing basis. Always check *OracleMetaLink* for the most up-to-date information. The *Oracle Applications Release Notes*, *Oracle Applications Installation Update Notes*, and *Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes* are available on *OracleMetaLink*.

Related Documents

All Release 11*i* documentation is included on the *Oracle Applications Document Library* CD, which is supplied in your Release 11*i* CD Pack. You can download some soft-copy documentation from <http://docs.oracle.com>. Or, you can purchase hard-copy documentation from the Oracle Store at <http://oraclestore.oracle.com>.

Note: All titles refer to Release 11*i*, unless otherwise noted. Documentation for pre-upgrade steps generally refers to the manuals associated with the release you are upgrading from.

Other documentation that you may need includes the following:

If you are looking for...	See these documents...
New Application features	<i>Oracle Applications Product Update Notes</i> <i>Oracle Applications User's Guides</i> <i>Oracle Applications Implementation Manuals</i> <i>Multiple Organizations in Oracle Applications</i> <i>Multiple Reporting Currencies in Oracle Applications</i> <i>Supplemental CRM Installation Steps</i>
Database information	<i>Oracle8i Backup and Recovery</i> <i>Oracle8i Reference Guide</i> <i>Oracle8i Tuning Guide</i> <i>Oracle8i National Language Support Guide</i>
Installation information	<i>Installing Oracle Applications</i> <i>Maintaining Oracle Applications</i> <i>Oracle Applications Installation Update</i> <i>Oracle Applications Release Notes</i> <i>Oracle Applications NLS Release Notes</i>
Information about custom development	<i>Oracle Applications User Interface Standards for Forms-based Products</i> <i>Oracle Applications Developer's Guide</i>
Other information	<i>Oracle Applications Concepts</i> <i>Oracle Applications System Administrator's Manual</i> <i>Oracle Self-Service Web Applications Implementation Manual</i> <i>Oracle Workflow Guide</i> <i>Oracle Applications Character Mode to GUI Menu Path Changes</i>

Oracle Customer Service

Oracle provides the following services and sources of information to help you with your installation or upgrade.

OracleMetaLink

OracleMetaLink is your self-service support connection with web, telephone menu, and email alternatives. Oracle supplies these technologies for your convenience, available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. With OracleMetaLink, you can obtain information and advice from technical libraries and forums, download patches, look at bug details, and create or update TARs. To use MetaLink, register at the following web site: <http://metalink.oracle.com>.

You should check OracleMetaLink alerts before you begin to install or upgrade any of your Oracle Applications.

Additional Information: The *Start Here* (red) CD contains links to platform-specific Installation Update Notes.

Consulting Services

Installing or upgrading to Oracle Applications Release 11i, as with any software package, can be complex due to the number of configuration options, network and operating systems, and other considerations. We recommend that you engage the services of a consulting organization with Release 11i experience to assist with the configuration and implementation of this release.

Oracle Consulting Services and Oracle Support Services are the main sources of help for installing Oracle Applications. Oracle Consulting Services can help you:

- determine machine size and database size required by Oracle Applications
- install or upgrade Oracle Applications
- implement Oracle Applications products
- customize Oracle Applications products
- install and configure multiple language support
- develop custom applications for use with Oracle Applications
- train users of Oracle Applications

The Oracle Support Services web site at <http://www.oracle.com/support> offers registered Oracle *MetaLink* customers self-service support technologies, available 24 hours, 7 days a week. If you contact Oracle Support Services, have this information available:

- your CSI number
- the operating system and version
- the release of Oracle Applications you are installing and the versions of the Oracle Server and Oracle tools you are using
- the release of Oracle Applications you are upgrading from
- a description of the problem as well as specific information about any error messages you received
- whether you have dial-in capability
- the output of the AD Configuration utility, contained in the `adutconf.lst` file.

Additional Information: AD Configuration, *Maintaining Oracle Applications*

EMM Advantage

The EasiPath Migration Method (EMM Advantage) offers a methodology for upgrading Oracle Applications. Produced by Oracle Corporation, EMM Advantage helps you structure and manage your upgrade project.

A comprehensive migration toolkit, EMM Advantage is a tested framework for quality migrations. It includes the Oracle EasiPath Migration Method (EMM), a proven, structured approach used successfully worldwide by Oracle consultants, and Project Management Method (PJM), a standardized Oracle approach to project management. The EMM Advantage toolkit, in combination with your skills, experience, and business knowledge, will ensure a higher-quality migration and lead you to business results faster. It is available from the Oracle Direct Marketing group in your country, or you can contact your local Oracle Sales Representative.

Index

A

- a1418823.sql, 2-33
- a1418828.sql, 2-34
- abtbscnv.pls, 2-5
- accessibility
 - statement of, xvi
- Account Generator, 2-11
 - customizing defaults (FlexBuilder), 4-23
 - customizing process (FlexBuilder), 4-22
 - how to upgrade (FlexBuilder), 4-22
 - replaces FlexBuilder, xxxi
- account segment values
 - correct account type for (GL), 6-12
 - using correct account type (PSB), 6-49
- accounting calendar
 - products using, 6-3
 - upgrading (FND), 6-3
- accounting data model
 - patch for (AX), 2-16
- accounting lines
 - updating (AX), 5-5
- accounting periods
 - closing (AX), 2-19
 - closing (CST), 3-19
- Accrual Reconciliation report
 - warning about (INV), 2-51
- AD patch
 - applying, xvii, 2-3
- ADA
 - statement of compliance, xvi
- adalnctl, 7-8
- adapcctl, 7-8
- adcmctl, 7-8
- addbctl, 7-8
- addbctx.sql, 3-35
- addbxxx.sql, 3-34
- addlnctl, 7-8
- address information
 - checking for invalid (PAY-US), 6-44
- addrpbco.sql, 1-3
- adfmctl, 7-8
- adfmsctl, 7-7
- adfrmctl, 7-7
- adgntbsp.sql, 2-6
- administration directory
 - access to (FND), 2-10
- adovars, 2-3
- adpuver.sql, 3-28
- adrepctl, 7-8
- adstoplg.sql, 3-37
- adsysapp.sql, 3-38
- adt00001.lst, xviii, xxii
- adtcctl, 7-8
- adupinfo.lst, 3-36, 3-37
- adupinfo.sql, 3-36
- adutconf.sql
 - running, xix
- advrf107.sql, 2-4
- advrfmrc.sql, 4-12
- afcuscm.sql, 2-6
- afdrpusr.sql, 2-7
- afdtrn01.sql, 2-10
- afffcfb.sql, 2-11
- afffupg1.sql, 4-14
- affixcvr.sql, 4-13
- afindxpr.sql, 2-8
- afpredps.sql, 2-9

- afpregdi.sql, 2-8
- afpubsyn.sql, 2-9
- afscprof.lct, 5-51
- afstatrn.sql, 1-6
- akcattr.jlt, 6-10
- akcflow.jlt, 6-10
- akchkp16.sql, 3-3
- akchkr11.rpt, 3-4
- akchkr11.sql, 3-4
- akchp16.rpt, 3-4
- akcobj.jlt, 6-10
- akcreg.jlt, 6-10
- akcsec.jlt, 6-10
- akdelp16.sql, 3-3
- Alert data
 - purging (ALR), 1-9
- alrdtrig.sql, 3-2
- AOL Audit Trail
 - disabling (FND), 3-29
- apaccr.sql, 7-6
- apaltfsp.sql, 2-22
- apboepre.sql, 2-21
- apcash.sql, 7-7
- apfspre1.sql, 2-23
- apfspre2.sql, 2-23
- apmsbrep.sql, 2-20
- apofftax.sql, 6-19
- APPL_TOP
 - changing character set, xxix
- application specialist
 - responsibilities of, xii
- applications listeners
 - shutting down (db), 3-30
- APPLMSK, 4-19
- APPLPTMP, 1-6
- APPLTMP, 1-6
- Appreciation
 - upgrading (JG), 6-30
- Appreciation QuickCode
 - setting up (JG), 6-30
- approval notifications
 - upgrading (PO), 5-57
- APPS schemas
 - compiling (db), 4-7
 - compiling (mrc), 4-10
 - validating (db), 2-4, 4-7
 - validating (mrc), 4-10
- APPSORA, 2-3
- apucfrpt.sql, 5-9
- apuinimp.sql, 3-8
- apumccur.sql, 3-7
- apxfdp01.sql, 6-20
- AR seed data
 - changes, xxxii
- ar115chk.sql, 3-12
- ar115upd.sql, 3-13
- ar115vdr.sql, 5-28
- ar115vds.sql, 3-12
- architecture
 - in this release, xxvii
- ASL Upgrade process
 - using (PO), 5-60
- asset lines
 - transferring (PA), 1-12
- attachment files
 - determining upload directory (FND), 1-8
 - loading into database (FND), 4-20
- attribute set
 - modifying (JA), 6-29
- audience
 - for Upgrade Manual, xi
- Auto-create Installed Base program
 - running (ONT), 2-53
- AutoInstall
 - See AutoUpgrade, xvi
- automatic archive logging
 - turning off (db), 3-37
- AutoPost
 - reviewing criteria for (GL), 6-15
- AutoSource rules
 - verifying your upgrade of (PO), 5-59
- AutoUpgrade
 - continue session, 3-40
 - restarting, 3-40
 - start new session, 3-41
 - starting and stopping, 3-39
 - using, xvi
- Average Rates cost type
 - defining (CST), 5-48
- award balances

- verifying (GMS), 4-28
- axxpos01.sql, 5-5
- axxpos02.sql, 5-5
- axxpos03.sql, 5-6
- axxpos04.sql, 5-7
- axxpos05.sql, 5-7
- axxpos06.sql, 5-7
- axxpre01.sql, 2-17
- axxpre02.sql, 2-18, 6-27

B

- b1275619.sql, 3-6
- backing up
 - product files (db), 4-9
- backing up your Applications, 7-9
- balance reports
 - submitting (AX), 2-18
- balances
 - calculating (AX), 2-17
 - update existing (AX), 5-5
- bank collection documents
 - importing (JL)), 1-16
- basepath variables
 - for custom application, 2-3
- batch commit size
 - affect on performance, xxiii
 - determining, xviii
- billing amounts
 - verifying (GMS), 4-28
- billing and shipping addresses
 - updating (PA), 5-21
- billing cycle names
 - updating (PA), 5-14
- billing extensions
 - updating customized (PA), 5-13
- billing title
 - populating for employee assignments (PA), 5-15
- BIS
 - setting up, 7-11
- block size
 - requirement, xxviii
- Brazilian subledgers
 - upgrading (JL), 2-45

- budgets
 - creating baseline (PSB), 6-50

C

- Canadian setup
 - recording (JA), 2-43
- catalog description profile option
 - defining (INV), 6-47
- categories
 - in an upgrade, xiii
- CBO
 - column-level histograms (db), 4-5
 - definition of, xxviii, 1-5
 - gathering database statistics for (db), 1-5, 3-36, 4-5
 - required after upgrade (db), 3-32
 - required init.ora parameter (db), 3-32
 - upgrading to, xxviii
 - using FND_STATS, 1-6
- certified products
 - complete list of, xx
- character columns
 - migrating non-integer data from (AX), 5-4
- character sets
 - changing, xxix
- character-mode
 - upgrading from, xi, xx
- check procedures
 - running (GMS), 3-22
- CLASSPATH, 2-3
- client extensions
 - adding parameters (PA), 5-16
 - backing up packages and views (PA), 3-11
 - reinstalling packages and views (PA), 5-20
- client software
 - configuring (db), 4-4
- collection elements
 - user-defined (AR), xxxiii
- columns
 - dropping obsolete, xxviii, 7-5
- commercial product versions, xiii
- commitment views
 - adding new currencies (PA), 5-18
 - adding non-recoverable tax amounts (PA), 5-18

- company information
 - defining additional for Singapore (JA), 6-25
 - defining additional for Taiwan (JA), 6-25
- concurrent managers
 - shutting down (db), 3-30
 - startup parameters, 4-18
- concurrent processing servers
 - restricting access to (FND), 4-18
- concurrent programs
 - managing custom libraries (AOL), 6-7
 - reconnecting spawned (FND), 4-16
- concurrent requests
 - purging (FND), 2-10
- conditionally required step
 - definition if, xiv
- consolidated family upgrade patches
 - applying, 2-2
- constraints
 - disabling custom (db), 3-38
 - re-enabling custom (db), 4-9
- consulting services
 - using, B-3
- control files
 - recreating (db), 3-31
- conventions
 - typographical, xiv
- cost-based optimization
 - See CBO, xxviii
- CPU
 - requirements in an upgrade, xx
- credit memo invoice dates
 - correcting (PA), 2-27
- CRM
 - changes in data model, xxi
- cross charge
 - implementing (PA), 6-22
- cross-reference data definitions
 - reporting (EC), 2-48, 4-26
- crucial downtime
 - definition of, xviii
- currency
 - updating (PA), 5-21
- custom code
 - updating (HR), 1-18
- CUSTOM libraries
 - migrating (FND), 4-17
 - preserving (FND), 1-8
- customers
 - migrating as persons (AR), 1-14
- customization by extension
 - definition of, xxiv
- customization by modification
 - definition of, xxiv
- customizations
 - backing up (db), 1-7
 - help files, xxvi
 - maintaining for scripts or reports (FND), 4-17
 - managing, xxiv
 - preserving CUSTOM library (FND), 1-8
 - preserving in an upgrade, xxiv
 - reapplying after upgrade, 4-5
 - types of, xxiv
 - upgrading and patching, xxv
- CUSTOM.pll, 4-17
- Cycles to Workflow upgrade
 - creating OM profile option (ONT), 5-51

D

- d107_to_1154.drv, 4-2
- d110_to_1154.drv, 4-2
- DACH reports, 6-30
- DAD
 - verifying (env), 4-29
- daily rates
 - defining profile option (GL), 6-17
 - determining conflicts in (GL), 2-14
 - loading customized programs (GL), 2-15
 - migrating (GL), 5-2
 - reviewing (GL), 2-12
- Danish EFT invoices
 - paying (JE), 2-45
- data
 - correcting existing (JA), 5-31
 - deleting unsupported Global Demo (AK), 3-3
 - invalid for non-Global Demo (AK), 3-3
 - migrating to new tables (FV), 5-66
 - uploading customized (AK), 6-9
- data correction script
 - running (PS Grants), 3-24

- data fix
 - running (PA), 2-33
- database
 - backing up (db), 3-38, 4-9
 - backing up (FND), 1-2
 - CBO statistics, xxviii
 - changing character set, xxix
 - changing passwords, 7-9
 - correcting problems (AR), 3-12
 - dropping objects (FND), 7-2
 - dropping obsolete objects (FV), 3-26
 - gathering information (db), 3-36
 - installing files, xxi
 - migrating, xxvii
 - relocating files (db), 3-31
 - renaming custom objects (db), 1-3
 - shutting down (FND), 1-2
 - sizing, 7-9
 - starting (db), 3-31
 - switching to new ORACLE_HOME (db), 3-31
 - updating to current release level, 4-2
 - using multiple, xxx
- database administrator
 - responsibilities of, xii
- DataInstall
 - running (HR/PAY), 5-43
- date format
 - in this release, xxx
- Date value sets
 - cloning (FND), 4-13
- dates
 - converting into canonical format (PSB), 6-49
- DateTime value sets
 - cloning (FND), 4-13
- deliveries/departures
 - closing (ONT), 2-55
- digital signature
 - creating (db), 4-4
- directory file protection
 - changing (FND), 4-18
- directory group
 - changing, 4-19
- discrete jobs
 - closing (WIP), 1-21
- disk space

- requirements in an upgrade, xxi
- docs.oracle.com
 - using, B-1
- document statuses
 - migrating (AX), 5-6
- documentation
 - list of, xvi
- downtime
 - minimizing, xviii
- draft invoices
 - updating (PA), 5-21

E

- EasiPath Migration Method, B-4
- ECELAYDR.sql, 2-48, 4-26
- ECEUGR2.sql, 2-49, 4-26
- ECEUGR.sql, 2-48, 4-26
- ECEXREFR.sql, 2-49, 4-26
- EFT
 - partitioning system formats (JG), 3-15
 - updating invoices for EDI (JE), 6-34
 - updating Swedish payment formats (JE), 2-44
- electronic mail
 - for concurrent managers (FND), 4-16
- EMM Advantage
 - how it works, B-4
- employee assignments
 - billing titles for (PA), 5-15
- environment
 - setting up (db), 2-3
 - setting variables, 2-3
- environment files
 - verifying, 7-8
- event billing
 - FIFO marking (PA), 5-21
- event types
 - migrating to new types (AX), 5-6
- Excel interface
 - enabling functionality (PSB), 6-51
- exception report
 - running (ONT), 2-55
- exchange rate migration script
 - running (HR), 5-46
 - running (HR/PAY)), 5-45

external documents
multilingual, xxix

F

facoldr.sql, 7-5
family consolidated upgrade patches
 applying, xvii
FastFormula definitions
 updating (HR), 1-19
file privilege
 altering for concurrent manager files
 (FND), 4-19
file system
 laying down, 2-2
 requirements in an upgrade, xxi
 sizes in an upgrade, xxi
finishing steps
 in an upgrade, xiii
finishing tasks
 required, 7-7
FlexBuilder
 indicating use of (FLX), 2-11
 replaced by Account Generator, xxxi
 using rules (FlexBuilder), 2-11
flexfields
 creating column indexes (AR), 5-23
 creating contexts/segments (AR), 5-29
 fixing cross-validation rules (FND), 4-12
 modifying existing (JA), 6-28
 recompiling, 7-5
 segment columns
 creating indexes on (INV), 6-45
 setting up definitions (ONT), 5-54
 updating attributes (JA), 6-28
 upgrading dates (FND), 4-14
 upgrading dates for AOL date validation
 (JG), 4-24
 upgrading numbers (FND), 4-14
Flexible Date Format, xxx
flmlsmck.sql, 2-46
.fmb files
 copying to AU_TOP (AOL), 6-6
FND_DESCR_FLEX_CONTEXT
 new column (AOL), 6-5

 updating custom calls to (AOL), 6-5
FND_HISTOGRAM_COLS table, 4-5
FND_LOOKUPS
 updating custom calls to (AOL), 6-5
FND_PRODUCT_INSTALLATIONS table, 4-5
FND_STATS
 using, 1-6
fndcpesr, 4-16
FNDDFFUPG utility
 using (FND), 4-14
FNDMDCVT program (AOL), 6-6
forms
 date format, xxx
 Multiple Radix Support, xxx
 rewriting custom character-mode (AOL), 1-9
 upgrading custom, xxvi
forms library
 copying custom (AOL), 6-6
future-dated payment
 choosing method for (AP), 2-21
 setting up account (AP), 6-19
fvapi107.sql, 3-25
fvapi110.sql, 3-25
fvdrpidx.sql, 3-27
fvupdfch.sql, 5-66
fvupditv.sql, 5-66
fvupdmnu.sql, 3-27
fvupg107.sql, 3-26
fvupg110.sql, 3-26
fvupgpsa.sql, 5-66

G

geocodes data
 updating (HR), 1-20
GIS subsidiaries
 reviewing (GL), 6-15
GL
 defining tax assignments (AR), 6-23
 upgrade option 1 (GL), 2-14
 upgrade option 2 (GL), 2-14
glips.sql, 6-4
Global Demo Database
 upgrading, xix
global legislation driver

- running (HR/PAY), 5-44
- globalization flexfield contexts
 - updating (JE), 6-34
- gluacsum.sql, 6-13
- glurtmrt.sql, 5-3
- glurtrpp.sql, 2-14
- glurtrpt.sql, 5-2
- gmsup115.drf, 4-27
- gmsupcdc.sql, 3-24
- gmsupmod.sql, 3-23
- gmsuppos.sql, 6-48
- gmsuprba.sql, 4-28
- gmsuprbl.sql, 4-28
- government product versions, xiii
- Grants Accounting tables
 - renaming (GMS), 3-23

H

- hard limit funded agreements
 - correcting (PA), 2-25
- hash_area_size parameter
 - setting for an upgrade, xxii
- help files
 - customized, xxvi
 - installing (db), 4-3
- historical worksheets
 - using for baseline budgets (PSB), 6-50
- holiday days
 - setting up (PS US Fed Financials), 6-53
- hrlegend.lst, 5-44
- Hungary
 - enabling flexfield (JE), 6-39

I

- implementation
 - product specific tasks, 7-12
- implementation steps
 - where to find, xvii
- important considerations
 - in an upgrade, xvii
- inactive products
 - upgrading, xix
- income tax types

- recreating French (JE), 6-36
- incremental backups
 - using, xxvi
- indexes
 - determining tablespace for, xxii
 - disabling custom (db), 3-38
 - dropping (AP), 7-6
 - dropping (FV), 3-27
 - dropping (ICX), 3-22
 - re-enabling custom (db), 4-9
 - verifying custom privileges (db), 2-8
- Inflation Ratio Precision profile option
 - recording value of (JL), 1-15
 - setting (JL), 5-35
- initjvm, 3-34
- init.ora
 - for migrated databases (db), 3-31
 - hash join processing, xxii
 - moving to new ORACLE_HOME (db), 3-31
 - number of parallel query server processes, xxii
 - setting parameters in (db), xxii, 1-4
 - setting prior to upgrade (db), 3-32
 - utl_file_dir in, 1-6
- installed products
 - treatment of, xxviii
- intercompany balancing
 - setting up (GL), 6-17
- interoperability patches
 - applying, xxvii
- inventory organizations
 - associating tax information (JL), 5-41
 - defining shipping parameters (ONT), 5-55
 - validating data (ONT), 2-56
- inventory valuation reports
 - running (INV), 3-18
 - verifying (INV), 5-47
- invflseg.sql, 6-46
- inviogds.sql, 6-47
- Invoice Import
 - purging expense reports (AP), 3-8
 - purging invoices (AP), 3-8
- invoices
 - cancelling/re-entering (JL), 5-42
 - setting up rounding account (PA), 5-16
- Invoker Rights

- effect on performance, xxiii
- invtxnpg.sql, 2-50
- invuomch.sql, 2-50
- IS manager
 - responsibilities of, xii
- Italian inventory tax types
 - creating (JE), 6-38
- item descriptions
 - updating (INV), 6-47

J

- jacarmpr.sql, 2-44
- jacaupgr.sql, 2-43
- jamlsmck.sql, 2-37
- jasgupg1.sql, 6-26, 6-27
- jasgupg2.sql, 6-27
- jathpupg.sql, 6-29
- jatwupg1.sql, 2-38
- jatwupg2.sql, 2-38
- jatwupg3.sql, 2-40
- jatwupg4.sql, 2-40
- jatwupg5.sql, 2-41
- jatwupg6.sql, 2-42
- Java output files
 - backing up (AK), 6-10
- Java Virtual Machine (JVM), 3-33
 - using (db), 4-4
- JAVA_TOP, 2-3
- jedetcf.sql, 6-40
- jedkediu.sql, 6-35
- jeesgdfm.sql, 6-34
- jefracdv.sql, 6-37
- jeftxtxp.sql, 6-36
- jehurvat.sql, 6-39
- jeitapid.sql, 6-38
- jeitmtlt.sql, 6-38
- jeitrvat.sql, 6-37
- JESEPBAI.sql, 2-44
- JESEPBSI.sql, 2-44
- JESEPBUT.sql, 2-44
- JESEPPOI.sql, 2-44
- JESEPPOU.sql, 2-44
- igzzfaap.sql, 6-31
- igzzper1.sql, 3-15

- igzzper2.sql, 3-15
- igzzswft.sql, 5-31
- igzzupgd.sql, 4-25
- JInitiator
 - repackaging (db), 4-4
- JL_BR_LOOKUPS
 - duplicate rows in (JL), 2-46
- jlbrsusl.sql, 2-45
- jlzztu01.sql, 5-40
- jlzztu02.sql, 5-40
- journal line 3rd-party information
 - updating (JL), 6-41
- journal line sequence numbers
 - updating (JE), 6-33
- journal posting
 - setting function security for (GL), 6-17

L

- Labor Distribution
 - upgrading (PSP), 5-65
- language configuration
 - retaining, xxix
- License Manager
 - using for language configuration, xxix
- licensed products
 - treatment of, xxviii
- linking records
 - GL and Payables (AP), 6-21
 - GL and Receivables (AR), 6-23
- local extent management
 - converting to (db), 2-5
- log files
 - reviewing, 7-7
- login
 - deleting records for unsuccessful (FND), 2-9
 - verifying operating system (db), 1-3
- long-running processes
 - examples of, xxii
 - list of, xviii, xxii
- lookup codes
 - creating new (JL), 5-35
 - modifying truncated (JA), 4-24
 - recording (JA), 2-37

M

- maintenance tasks
 - understanding, 7-12
- Makefile, 6-8
- mass additions
 - posting (PA), 1-12
- mass funds check/reservation
 - reviewing parameters (GL), 6-16
- material subelement
 - defining default for (CST), 5-48
- memory
 - requirements in an upgrade, xxi
- menus
 - updating custom for JE submenus (JE), 5-34
 - updating custom for JG submenus (JG), 5-30
 - upgrading (FV), 3-27
- Message Dictionary
 - converting functions in (AOL), 7-11
 - custom messages (AOL), 6-6
- messages
 - converting character-mode (AOL), 6-6
- MetaLink
 - see OracleMetaLink
- middle tier components
 - creating in an upgrade, xvii
- migration driver
 - running (GMS), 4-27
- MLS dates
 - correcting (PA), 2-24
- MRC
 - converting database to, 7-12
 - exchange rates in (AP), 3-6
 - transferring data to GL (AP), 3-9
 - verifying installation of (mrc), 4-11
- MRP
 - modifying profile options (PO), 3-21
 - setting profile options (PO), 5-59
- multilingual support
 - enhancements, xxix
 - maintaining tables (db), 1-3
- Multi-Org
 - activating transaction managers (PO), 5-56
 - converting database to, 7-11
 - required profile option, xxvii

- multiple databases
 - performing upgrades on, xxx
- Multiple Radix Support
 - in forms, xxx
- multiple supplier banks
 - upgrading supplier data for (AP), 2-20
 - upgrading supplier site bank data for (AP), 2-20

N

- Natural Account tax codes
 - defining (GL), 6-23
- NCA
 - upgrading from, xi, xvii
- negative amount events
 - correcting (PA), 3-10
- Net8
 - setting up (db), 3-32
- new file system
 - created by Rapid Install, xviii
- NLS
 - completing upgrade steps for (db), 3-39
 - database considerations, xxix
 - installing translated software, 4-3
- NLS support
 - setting up, 7-10
- non-adjusting negative amount items
 - correcting (PA), 2-26
- non-Global Demo databases
 - invalid data in (AK), 3-3
- non-working days
 - setting up (PS US Fed Financials), 6-53
- number format
 - in this release, xxx

O

- OA_JDK_TOP, 2-3
- OAD_TOP, 2-3
- OAH_TOP, 2-3
- objects
 - dropping (db), 7-2
 - dropping (FV), 3-26
 - integrating custom (db), 4-8
 - removing obsolete (PSP), 5-65

- renaming custom (db), 1-3
- Offset taxes
 - setting up (AP), 6-18
- One-Hour Install
 - See Rapid Install, xvi
- online help
 - installing, 7-3
 - installing (db), 4-3
- ontexc06.sql, 5-50
- ontexc07.sql, 2-54
- ontexc08.sql, 2-57
- ontpfupg.ldt, 5-51
- ontupg48.sql, 5-51
- ontupg49.sql, 5-53
- open interface
 - purging invoices (AP), 3-7
- open interface tables
 - clearing (PO), 2-34
- Operating Unit
 - setting profile option, xxvii
- optimization
 - definition of, xxviii
- Oracle Applications
 - starting, 7-10
- Oracle Consulting Services
 - contacting, B-3
- Oracle Forms 4.5
 - regenerating (AOL), xxvi
 - upgrading (AOL), 1-9
- Oracle Forms Developer 6i, 1-9
- Oracle optimizer
 - method used, xxviii
 - using, 1-5
- ORACLE schema
 - identifying potential conflicts (FND), 3-28
 - resetting passwords (db), 4-4
 - verifying (FND), 1-7
- Oracle Support Services
 - contacting, B-3
 - web site, B-3
- Oracle users
 - dropping obsolete (HR), 6-42
- ORACLE_HOME
 - created by Rapid Install, xvii
- Oracle8i

- upgrading to (db), 1-4, 3-30
- OracleMetaLink
 - using, B-2
- oraclestore.oracle.com
 - using, B-1
- order creation/manipulation
 - setting up responsibilities (ONT), 5-51
- Order Entry cycles
 - omitted from upgrade (ONT), 2-57
- Order Entry Interface programs
 - running (ONT), 2-52
- Order Import program
 - running (ONT), 2-53
- Order Management
 - changes in data model, xxi
- orders
 - closing eligible (ONT), 2-52
 - reviewing status (ONT), 2-53
- organization code
 - definition of (INV), 2-51
- organizational payment method
 - associating with a set of books (HR/PAY)), 5-46
- organizations
 - associating names with pre-existing definitions (ALR), 6-8
 - correcting default accounts (INV), 5-47
 - reviewing (PA), 5-11
 - reviewing default accounts (INV), 5-47
- output interface data file definitions
 - reporting (EC), 2-47, 4-25
- Overtime Calculation program
 - converting to PL/SQL (PA), 5-15
- owners' equity accounts
 - translating (GL), 6-14

P

- p111u10a.sql, 5-22
- p1392293.sql, 5-22
- pa11u506.sql, 5-15
- pa620118.sql, 2-25
- pa630505.sql, 5-21
- pa634580.lst, 3-10
- pa634580.sql, 3-10
- pa652811.sql, 2-27

- pa661335.sql, 2-26
- pa858651.sql, 2-31
- pa882573.sql, 2-33
- packages
 - dropping invalidated (PA), 5-22
- pacrttab.sql, 2-29
- pacstrev.sql, 2-32
- painv.sql, 2-30
- parallel_max_servers parameter
 - setting for an upgrade, xxii
- pardlrpt.sql, 2-28
- pardlupd.sql, 2-29
- partially implemented installed products, xix
- partially recoverable taxes
 - setting up (AP), 6-20, 6-21
- passwords
 - changing for Applications, 7-10
 - changing for database, 7-9
 - resetting in ORACLE schema (db), 4-4
- patch 1105095, 1-20
- patch 1257205, 2-16
- patch 1268797, 1-6
- patch 1275619, 3-6
- patch 1570300, 2-11
- patch 1746184, 2-16
- patch 786842, 5-41
- patch 839884, 5-42
- patching
 - on NT, xx
- patxnerr.sql, 2-24
- patxnsq.sql, 2-24
- paupgor2.sql, 5-11
- Payables
 - transferring data to GL (AP), 3-9
- payment batches
 - completing outstanding (AP), 1-11
- payment formats
 - remodifying (AP), 5-8
- payment records
 - updating existing (AP), 3-6
- pegbutcl.lst, 5-44
- peoldsec.sql, 6-43
- period rates
 - reviewing (GL), 6-13
- perleggb.lst, 5-44
- Personal Homepage
 - setting date preferences, xxx
- petskwrn.sql, 2-47
- peupl01v.sql, 6-42
- physical inventories in process
 - completing (INV), 3-17
- pick slips
 - closing (ONT), 2-55
 - defining grouping rules (ONT), 5-54
- picking batches
 - closing (ONT), 2-55
- Planning Manager
 - starting (MRP), 5-49
- PL/SQL
 - identifying log file directory (db), 1-6, 3-32
 - identifying output file directory (db), 1-6, 3-32
- plxmlparser_v1_0_2.zip, 4-6
- pocntpoh.sql, 2-35
- pocntrcv.sql, 2-35
- pocntreq.sql, 2-35
- podold.sql, 7-3
- position
 - updating custom (HR), 1-19
- Posting Manager (AX), 2-17
- post-upgrade steps
 - definition of, xiii
- preparatory scripts
 - running (db), 3-33, 3-38
- prepayment payment terms
 - setting up (AP), 5-9
- pre-upgrade steps
 - definition of, xiii
- pricing profiles
 - setting up (ONT), 5-54
- primary unit of measure
 - finding items without (INV), 2-50
- processing constraints
 - setting up (ONT), 5-53
- product files
 - backing up, 4-9
 - deleting, 7-4
- product short names
 - list of, A-1
- product table tablespace
 - determining size for, xxii

- products
 - listing of, xvi
- product-specific documentation
 - using for upgrade, xvii
- profile options
 - resetting (PS US Fed Financials), 6-52
 - setting (FND), 4-13
- profiles
 - verifying (GMS), 4-27
- Project Management Method, B-4
- project status
 - updating values for (PA), 5-12
- PSBCODE.DB, 6-51
- PSBCODE.eif, 6-52
- PSBUACSM.sql, 6-49
- PSBUDATE.sql, 6-50
- PSBUNUMB.sql, 6-50
- PSBVEXCL.xla, 6-51
- PSBVEXCL.xls, 6-51
- psprmob.sq, 5-65
- pspup115.lst, 5-65
- pspup115.sql, 5-65
- Public Sector Applications products
 - upgrading, xxxi
- public synonyms
 - dropping (db), 2-8
- purge cutoff date
 - definition of (INV), 2-51
- pyrtmig.sql, 5-45
- pyvaladr.sql, 6-45

R

- radix
 - characters (FND), 4-15
 - converting real numbers to (PSB), 6-50
 - format for numbers, xxx
- Rapid Install
 - configuring server processes (db), 4-3
 - creating file system with, xviii
 - environment setup files, 7-8
 - laying down file systems, 2-2
 - setting up technology stack, 2-2
 - starting server processes (db), 4-3
 - upgrading with, xvi

- using for server processes, xvii
 - when to use, xvii
- rcvrmaup.sql, 5-64
- real numbers
 - converting into multiradix format (PSB), 6-50
- realized gains, losses, and rounding accounts (AR), 1-14
- Receivables
 - interface with Projects (PA), xxxii
- recommended step
 - definition of, xiv
- Reconciliation Open Interface
 - backing up customized objects (CE), 1-10
 - reinstalling customized objects (CE), 6-10
- recoverable tax
 - enabling (AP), 2-22
- recovery rules
 - print listings (JA), 2-43
- release sequence rules
 - defining (ONT), 5-55
- relinking
 - on NT, xx
- renamed files
 - protecting data in, xix
- reports
 - customized, xxvi
 - setting up security groups (FND), 6-2
 - updating custom (HR), 1-18
- request groups
 - assigning to responsibilities (JA), 6-32
- required step
 - definition of, xiv
- responsibilities
 - reviewing user (FND), 1-8
 - updating/verifying custom (FND), 4-17
 - upgrading character-mode (JE), 5-32
- revaluation rule
 - for income statement accounts (GL), 6-14
- revenue distributions
 - correcting bill amount data (PA), 2-28
- reversing functions
 - setting security for (GL), 6-17
- reversing items
 - correcting (PA), 2-30, 2-31
- roles

- in an upgrade, xi
- rollback segments
 - determining size of, xviii, xxi
 - setting for normal use (db), 4-5
 - verify sizing (db), 3-37
- rows per commit
 - definition of (INV), 2-51
- RPT
 - removed support for, xxvi
- rule-based optimization
 - in this release, xxviii
- rules
 - associating (FlexBuilder), 4-23

S

- salary proposal view
 - customized script for (HR), 1-18
 - reapply customization to script (HR), 6-42
- sales orders/invoices
 - updating (JL), 5-37
- schemas
 - dropping custom (db), 2-6
 - integrating custom (db), 4-8
 - maintaining (mrc), 4-10
- scripts
 - restricting access to (FND), 4-20
- seed data
 - dropping obsolete (FV), 3-25
 - loading (FV), 5-67
- seeded attributes
 - reviewing (ONT), 5-54
- seeded item types
 - updating (Workflow), 3-4
- Segment Value Inheritance
 - preserving GL account codes (GL), 6-11
- Self-Service Time
 - implementing (PA), 6-22
- server process control scripts
 - reviewing, 7-7
- server processes
 - configuring (db), 4-3
 - starting (db), 4-3
 - starting and configuring, xvii
- shared products

- warnings about, xix
- ship methods/carrier mappings
 - defining (ONT), 5-55
- shipping execution
 - setting up profiles/menus (ONT), 5-56
- Shipping Interface programs
 - running (ONT), 2-55
- SmartClient
 - upgrading from, xi, xvii
- SQL*Forms 2.3
 - rewriting, xxvi, 1-9
- SQL*Plus options
 - checking (db), 3-36
- SQL*Report
 - no support for, xxvi
- srw directory
 - changing name of (AOL), 6-6
- step summary lines
 - how to use, xiv
- steps
 - conditionally required, xiv
 - in an upgrade, xiii
 - recommended, xiv
 - required, xiv
- summarization model
 - upgrading to (PA), 1-13
- Swift Code field
 - enabling (JG), 5-31
- SYS account password
 - defaults for, 7-9
- SYSADMIN
 - enabling (FND), 3-28
- SYSTEM account password
 - defaults for, 7-9
- system administrator
 - responsibilities of, xii
- system requirements
 - for upgrading, xix
- SYSTEM tablespace
 - determining size of, xxi

T

- tables
 - dropping obsolete (PS Grants), 6-48

- tablespaces
 - creating for new products (db), 2-6
 - requirements in an upgrade, xxi
 - resizing for existing products (db), 2-6
 - setting up (db), 2-5, 3-32
- taskflow definitions
 - updating (HR), 2-47
- tax code
 - enabling (JE), 6-40
 - enabling for Thai Payables (JA), 6-28
- tax groups
 - associating with tax categories (JL), 5-42
- tax information
 - populating (AX), 5-7
 - updating custom (PAY-US), 1-20
- tax rebate
 - print listings (JA), 2-43
- tax registration numbers
 - moving (JA), 2-40, 2-41
- tax structure
 - renaming custom (AR), 1-13
- tax system options
 - setting (JL), 5-36
- tax types
 - updating (JA), 6-26
- tax vendor
 - dropping synonyms (AR), 3-12
 - updating flexfield information (AR), 5-28
- tax vendor extension
 - creating custom views (AR), 5-25
 - saving (AR), 1-14
- taxable amounts
 - updating (JE), 6-38
- Taxware
 - additional upgrade issues (AR), 1-14, 5-28
- technical appraisals
 - re-archiving (JL), 5-42
- technical appraisals and adjustments
 - restoring (JL), 1-16
- technical specialist
 - responsibilities of, xii
- technology stack
 - requirements in an upgrade, xix
 - setting up, 2-2
- TEMP tablespace
 - setting, xxii
- temporary and interface tables
 - processing data in (INV), 3-17
- temporary tablespace
 - determining size for, xxi
 - setting for an upgrade, xxii
- test upgrade
 - performing, xvii
- tiebacks
 - completing (PA), 1-11
- timecards
 - in PTE (PA), 3-9
- timing statistics
 - baseline, xvii
- timing statistics spreadsheet
 - using, xviii
- transaction control extension
 - adding parameters (PA), 5-17
- transaction flexfield columns
 - indexes on (AR), 5-23
- transaction history
 - purging (INV), 2-50
- Transaction Interface table
 - clearing (PA), 1-12
 - updating (PA), 5-20
- transaction managers
 - activating for Multi-Org (PO), 5-56
- transaction types
 - reviewing upgraded (ONT), 5-53
- transactions
 - printing completed (JL), 1-17
 - summarizing and transferring (PSP), 1-22
 - translated (AX), 2-17
- Transfer to GL posted flag
 - upgrading (AX), 5-7
- transfers
 - completing (PA), 1-11
- triggers
 - disabling custom (db), 3-38
 - dropping event alert (ALR), 3-2
 - re-creating event alert (ALR), 6-9
 - re-enabling custom (db), 4-9
- txn_fix.lst, 2-24

U

- umask command
 - using (FND), 4-19
- uncosted transactions
 - standard costing
 - inventory only (CST), 3-18
- uniform invoice information
 - moving (JA), 2-38
- uniform numbers
 - moving (JA), 2-40, 2-41
 - recording (JA), 2-42
- UNIX Edition group
 - creating (FND), 4-18
- update awards summary
 - running (GMS), 3-23
- upgrade
 - baseline timing statistics, xvii
 - documenting errors in (ONT/WSH), 5-50
 - important considerations for, xvii
 - list of tasks, xvi
 - performing test, xvii
 - scheduling, xvii
 - using Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet, xviii
- Upgrade Assistant Spreadsheet
 - using, xviii
- upgrade steps
 - types of, xiii
- upgrade.out, 5-59
- utl_file_dir
 - in the diagnosis script (AR), 3-12
 - value in init.ora, 1-6

V

- VAT
 - compliance (GL), 6-23
 - updating French invoices (JE), 6-36
 - updating Hungarian transactions (JE), 6-39
 - updating Italian transactions (JE), 6-37
- Vertex
 - additional upgrade issues (AR), 1-14, 5-28
- Vertex geocodes
 - updating (HR), 1-20

W

- warehouse name information
 - adding to transactions (JL), 5-41
- wfprotrst.sql, 3-5
- wfrmitt.sql, 3-5
- WIP Inventory Value report
 - standard costing
 - manufacturing (CST), 3-19
- WIP Value reports
 - verifying balances (CST), 5-47
- Workflow
 - completing installation of (FlexBuilder), 4-21
- Workflow Builder
 - completing installation of (FlexBuilder), 4-21
- wshpre00.sql, 2-56
- wshuplog.sql, 5-50

X

- XML Parser
 - installing, 4-6
- XML SQL Utility
 - installing (db), 4-6
- XSU12_ver1_1_1.zip, 4-6

